

SECOND TERM

English

5th PRIMARY

20
26

5



Contents

Unit 1 “Hobbies Make Us Shine!”	4
Unit 2 At the Doctor’s	46
Unit 3 Suitcase Stories	83
Review 1	119
Unit 4 Jobs in The Animal Kingdom	122
Unit 5 Our Solar System	165
Unit 6 Offline but Happy	205
Monthly Tests	217
General Activities	227
Al-Azhar Tests	257
Listening	261

"Hobbies Make Us Shine!"

"الهوايات تجعلنا تتألق!"

Unit One



Objectives

Vocabulary :

- board games, cycling, skating, painting, singing, building puzzles, playing the piano, crafting with paper, chores, hobby, talent show, perform, arrangement, excitement, caring for, discussion, survey

Language in Use :

- Expressing Ability (past and present)

Life Skills :

- Planning - Communication - Life Balance
Healthy Habits

Core Value :

- Creativity

Integrated Learning Activities :

- Survey about hobbies

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



solving puzzles
حل الألغاز



cycling
ركوب الدراجات



skating
التزلج



painting
الرسم / التلوين



crafting with paper
أعمال يدوية بالورق



playing the piano
عزف البيانو



playing board games
لعب الألعاب اللوحية



singing
الغناء

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

talent	موهبة	fishing	الصيد
hobby	هواية	dancing	الرقص
class	فصل / صف	journal	دفتر يومي / مذكرة
drawing	رسم	wonderful	رائع
song	أغنية	choice	اختيار
story writing	كتابة القصص	show	عرض
coloring	التلوين	tennis	تنس
cinema	سينما	joy	بهجة / سعادة
voice	صوت	natural	طبيعي
bicycle	دراجة	skill	مهارة
creative	مبدع	talent show	عرض المواهب

Unit 1

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
want	يريد	wanted		skip	يفوت / يتخطى	skipped	
remember	يتذكر	remembered		perform	يعرض / يؤدي	performed	

Irregular verbs

ride	يركب	rode		forget	ينسى	forgot	
------	------	------	--	--------	------	--------	--

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	will be amazing	سيكون مذهلاً
count as	يُعدك / يعتبرك	join pieces together	يجمع القطع معاً
sounds fun	يبدو ممتعاً	bring your hobby to life	أحي هوايتك

Definitions

تعريفات

talent	a natural skill	الموهبة: مهارة طبيعية
crafting	making something with your hands	الحرفة: صناعة شيء بيدك
cycling	riding a bicycle	ركوب الدراجات: ركوب دراجة
singing	using your voice for music	الغناء: استخدام صوتك للموسيقى
solving puzzles	a game where you join pieces together	حل الألغاز: هي لعبة حيث تجمع القطع معاً

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- I like puzzles.

a) solving

b) singing

c) painting

d) cycling

- 2 - Writing stories is my favorite
a) happy b) story c) voice d) hobby
- 3 - I ride my bicycle every day. I like
a) writing b) crafting c) cycling d) coloring
- 4 - My father goes He catches big fish.
a) dancing b) fishing c) playing d) skating
- 5 - She likes with paper. She makes amazing shapes.
a) crafting b) solving c) eating d) skipping
- 6 - He has a It's a natural skill.
a) hobby b) bicycle c) talent d) journal
- 7 - My favorite hobby is on ice.
a) skating b) fishing c) painting d) riding
- 8 - Playing sounds fun.
a) puzzle b) story c) bicycle d) board games



Main Points :

- The students will have a "Hobby Talent Show class".
- التلاميذ سيكون لديهم حصة عرض مواهب الهوايات.
- Maya will show her drawing and painting.
- مايا سوف تعرض رسمها وتلوينها.
- Maya can also do some crafting with paper.
- مايا يمكن أن تصنع أعمال يدوية بالورق أيضاً.
- Adam will perform by playing the piano and singing a song.
- آدم سوف يؤدي بعزف البيانو وغناء أغنية.
- Maya loves cycling and skating in the park on weekends.
- مايا تحب ركوب الدراجات والتزلج في الحديقة في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع.
- Adam enjoys solving puzzles and playing board games.
- آدم يستمتع بحل الألغاز ولعب الألعاب اللوحية.
- Nour's hobby is story writing. She writes stories or journals.
- هواية نور هي كتابة القصص. إنها تكتب قصص أو دفاتر يومية.
- They will bring their hobbies to life and share joy.
- سوف يحولون هواياتهم إلى واقع حي ويتشاركون البهجة.

Reading: Show Your Talent

اعرض موهبتك

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Teacher : Next week we'll have a "Hobby Talent Show class"

Who wants to share their hobby?

المعلم: الأسبوع القادم سيكون لدينا "حصة لعرض المواهب في الهوايات". من يريد مشاركة هوايته؟

Maya : Me! I'll show my drawing and painting. I can also do some crafting with paper.

مايا : أنا! سأعرض رسوماتي ولوحاتي. كما يمكنني القيام ببعض الأعمال اليدوية باستخدام الورق.

Adam : That sounds fun! I think I'll perform by playing the piano and singing a song.

آدم : هذا يبدو ممتعاً! أعتقد أنني سأقدم عرضاً بالعزف على البيانو وغناء أغنية.

Maya : On weekends, I love cycling and skating in the park.

Maybe I can bring a picture of that.

مايا : في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع أحب ركوب الدراجات والتزلج في الحديقة. ربما أستطيع إحضار صورة لذلك.

Adam : I enjoy solving puzzles and playing board games with my family. Could that count as a hobby?

آدم : أستمتع بحل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة مع عائلتي. هل يمكن اعتبار ذلك هواية؟

Nour : Story writing is my hobby. I sometimes write stories or journals.

نور : كتابة القصص هوايتي. أحياناً أكتب قصصاً أو مذكرات.

Maya : Don't forget coloring- we love it! This talent show will be amazing!

مايا : لا تنسوا التلوين - نحن نحبها! سيكون عرض المواهب هذا مذهلاً!

Teacher : Wonderful choices, everyone! Remember, hobbies make us special. Next week, bring your hobby to life and share your joy with the class!

المعلم: اختيارات رائعة، كلكم! تذكروا أن الهوايات تجعلنا مميزين. في الأسبوع القادم، حولوا هواياتكم لواقع حي وشاركوا فرحتكم مع الصف!

S.B Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

اقرأ واكتب (T) للصح و (F) للخطأ.

- 1- Maya likes swimming and fishing. ()
- 2- Adam wants to play the piano and sing. ()
- 3- Nour enjoys puzzles and board games. ()
- 4- The students are planning a talent show. ()
- 5- The teacher does not like their hobbies. ()

Quick
Tips

will = 'll
can
could
to + inf

love
enjoy
by + v.ing

Exercises

Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- Solving is a game where you join pieces together.
a) puzzles b) singing c) crafting d) toys
- 2- means making something with your hands.
a) Singing b) Crafting c) Cycling d) Jumping
- 3- The students will by playing the piano in the school event.
a) perform b) repair c) close d) forget
- 4- My little sister is very good at She creates beautiful shapes.
a) sleeping early b) crafting with paper
c) driving cars d) fixing machines
- 5- My sister loves on ice in winter.
a) skate b) skating c) skip d) skipping
- 6- He bought a new helmet for this weekend.
a) dancing b) cycling c) swimming d) writing
- 7- She will a picture of the sunset.
a) paint b) painting c) paints d) painted

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ وأكمل.

(hobbies - painting - skating - sleeping - stories)

Hobbies are activities we enjoy doing in our free time. Everyone has different (1) Some people like reading books or writing (2) Others enjoy playing sports like football, basketball, or (3) Many people like creative hobbies like drawing, (4) or crafting. Hobbies make our lives more interesting.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I am Asser. We will have a "Hobby Talent Show class" in our school next week. Students like to show their special talents and hobbies on that day. My friend Khaled likes singing, so he will sing a nice song. My friend Rami will play music on the piano. Some students will share their skills in painting and drawing. I like making things with my hands. I can do some crafting with paper. My favorite hobby is story writing. So I decided to share a story about our talents. Our hobbies make us special.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "skills" means
 a) talents b) cars c) birds d) paper
- 2- Asser can do some
 a) crafting b) skating c) cycling d) coloring

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does Khaled like?

- 4- What did Asser decide to do?

- 5- Who will perform by playing the piano?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

- 1- Who - share - wants - hobby - to - their ?

- 2- love - I - skating - cycling - and - park - the - in .

- 3- sometimes - write - I - stories - journals- or .

4- show - my - painting - and - I - will - drawing .

5- is - favorite - What - your - hobby ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1- This talent show will (is) amazing.

2-I can (doing) some crafting with paper.

3- Hobbies (is) important for children.

4- Rania likes (draw) and painting.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

i will show you my paintings

what hobby do you want to show

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Hobby Talent Show class"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " فصل عرض مواهب الهوايات ."

(perform - crafting - skating)

Key vocabulary

free time	وقت الفراغ	patience	الصبر
schoolwork	الأعمال المدرسية	creativity	الإبداع
activities	أنشطة	energetic	نشط / حيوي
teamwork	العمل الجماعي	required	مطلوب
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	success	النجاح

المفردات الرئيسية

Vocabulary

children	أطفال	smarter	أذكى
younger	أصغر سناً	reason	سبب
well	جيداً	money	نقود
main idea	فكرة رئيسية	adult	بالغ
clearly	بوضوح	concert	حفلة موسيقي
helmet	خوذة	chores	أعمال منزلية
safety	الأمان	today	اليوم
time	وقت	right	صحيح

المفردات اللغوية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
count	يحسب	counted		practice	يمارس / يتدرب	practiced	
matter	يهم	mattered		paint	يلون	painted	
finish	ينهي	finished		earn	يكسب	earned	
suggest	يقترح	suggested		improve	يحسن / يطور	improved	
balance	يوازن	balanced		place	يضع	placed	

Irregular verbs

draw	يرسم	drew	write	يكتب	wrote
spend	يقضي	spent	run	يجري	ran
choose	يختار	chose	learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned
teach	يُعلم	taught	wear	يرتدي	wore

Expressions and prepositions — التعبيرات وحروف الجر

take the place of	يحل محل	outside	بالخارج
good at + اسم / v-ing	جيد في	stay healthy	يبقى صحيًا
right now	في الحال / الآن	I was able to	كنت قادراً أن

Check your Vocab.

1 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I do my hobbies in my
a) bedtime b) free time c) school time d) lunch time
- Playing sports makes you
a) energetic b) lazy c) unhealthy d) adult
- Schoolwork is for success in school.
a) safety b) problem c) creative d) required
- My father is good at -solving.
a) problem b) piano c) team d) chores
- Learning the piano needs and creativity.
a) helmet b) right c) patience d) clearly
- He works hard to more money.
a) draw b) matter c) suggest d) earn
- I helped my mom do some at home.
a) chores b) schoolwork c) concert d) reason
- Laila will sing at the school
a) concert b) bed c) success d) teamwork

2 (S.B) Choose the correct word from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل.

(cycling – reading – painting – puzzles – singing)

- 1- I enjoy before I go to bed because books are relaxing.
- 2- My brother likes..... in the park, but he wears a helmet for safety.
- 3- When we play, we must think carefully to find the right piece.
- 4- At the school concert, I practiced..... my favorite song.
- 5- She is very good at..... pictures of flowers and animals.



Main Points

- Hobbies are activities we love to do in our free time and bring us joy.
- الهوايات هي أنشطة نحب أن نقوم بها في وقت فراغنا وتجلب لنا البهجة.
- Hobbies help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy.
- الهوايات تساعدنا أن نسترخي ونستمتع ونبقى أصحاء.
- We learn teamwork and problem-solving when we play board games or solve puzzles.
- نتعلم العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات عندما نلعب الألعاب اللوحية أو نحل الألغاز.
- We practice patience and creativity when we sing or play the piano.
- نمارس الصبر والإبداع عندما نغني أو نعزف البيانو.
- When we go cycling or skating, we stay strong and energetic.
- عندما نذهب لركوب الدراجات أو التزلج، نبقى أصحاء ونشيطين.
- Hobbies show how people grow through what they could do in the past and today.
- الهوايات ترينا كيف ينمو الناس من خلال ما استطاعوا أن يفعلوه في الماضي وما يستطيعوا فعله اليوم.
- In the past, children could spend more time outside running, skating, and fishing.
- في الماضي، استطاع الأطفال قضاء وقت أكثر في الخارج، يجرون ويتزلجون ويصطادون.
- Hobbies are not only fun, they make us smarter, stronger and happier.
- الهوايات ليست فقط ممتعة، انها تجعلنا أذكى وأقوى وأكثر سعادة.

Reading : Hobbies Really Count !

الهوايات مهمة حقاً!

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time. They are not schoolwork, but things that bring us joy.

الهوايات هي الأنشطة التي نحب القيام بها في أوقات فراغنا. إنها ليست واجبات مدرسية، بل أشياء تجلب لنا السعادة.

Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. For example, when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving. When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity. When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and energetic.

الهوايات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على الاسترخاء، والاستمتاع، والحفاظ على صحتنا. على سبيل المثال، عندما يلعب الناس ألعاب الطاولة أو يحلون الألغاز، فإنهم يتعلمون العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات. عندما يغنون أو يعزفون على البيانو، فإنهم يمارسون الصبر والإبداع. وعندما يذهبون لركوب الدراجات أو التزلج، فإنهم يحافظون على قوتهم ونشاطهم.

Hobbies also show how people grow. Many children can draw, paint, or write stories now, but when they were younger, they couldn't do these activities well. Some people can finish puzzles quickly today, but before they could only place a few pieces.

تظهر الهوايات أيضًا كيف ينمو الناس. يستطيع العديد من الأطفال الرسم أو التلوين أو كتابة القصص الآن، ولكن عندما كانوا أصغر سنًا، لم يتمكنوا من القيام بهذه الأنشطة بشكل جيد. يستطيع بعض الأشخاص اليوم إنهاء الألغاز بسرعة، لكن في السابق لم يكن بوسعهم سوى وضع بضع قطع.

In the past, children could spend more time outside running, skating, or fishing. Today, we can choose from many hobbies that help us learn skills for life. The main idea is simple: hobbies are not only fun, they make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

في الماضي، كان بإمكان الأطفال قضاء وقت أطول بالخارج يمارسون الجري أو التزلج أو الصيد. اليوم، يمكننا الاختيار من بين العديد من الهوايات التي تساعدنا على اكتساب مهارات حياتية. الفكرة الأساسية بسيطة: الهوايات ليست ممتعة فحسب، بل تجعلنا أكثر ذكاءً وقوة وسعادة.

1- What hobbies could children enjoy outside in the past?

2- Which hobby do you like most, and why?

Language

Expressing Ability

التعبير عن المقدرة

present المضارع

- عند التعبير عن المقدرة أو عدم المقدرة في المضارع نستخدم:

+ Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

Sub + **can** + inf يستطيع أن

Ex: - I **can** write stories.
- She **can** play tennis.

- Negative الجملة المنفية

Sub + **can't** + inf لا يستطيع أن

Ex: - They **can't** skate.
- He **can't** solve puzzles.

past الماضي

- عند التعبير عن المقدرة أو عدم المقدرة في الماضي نستخدم:

+ Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

Sub + **could** + inf أستطيع أن

Ex: - I **could** draw when I was young.
- She **could** cook when she was ten.

- Negative الجملة المنفية

Sub + **couldn't** + inf لم يستطيع أن

Ex: - We **couldn't** cycle last weekend.
- It **couldn't** eat because the food was hot.

- لاحظ: عند استخدام **when** مع **could** يأتي بعد **when** جملة ماضي بسيط.

But لكن

- تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض.

Ex: - I can play football now, **but** last year, I couldn't.
- When I was younger, I couldn't swim, **but** now, I can.
- He can read stories now, **but** when he was five, he couldn't.
- She can't play in the park today, **but** yesterday, she could.

Check your language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- She go out now, it's raining heavily.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 2- We cycle when we were young. We were clever.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 3- She can watch TV now, but an hour ago, she
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 4- He drink water now. It's too cold.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 5- My father write stories at 15. He was smart.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 6- She swim when she was in Alexandria. She was tired.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 7- He won the race. He run very fast.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 8- We can at the school concert.
a) sing b) sang c) singing d) sings
- 9- My sister couldn't the piano last year.
a) played b) play c) plays d) playing
- 10- I can sing well now, last year, I couldn't.
a) and b) so c) but d) to

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- I (can't) ride a bike now. I cycle fast.
- 2- She could (drew) pictures.
- 3- We can eat now, but an hour ago, we (could).
- 4- The boy (can) do homework now. He is late.
- 5- My mother could (cooked) when she was 14.
- 6- He (can) draw pictures when he was young.
- 7- Now, I can play , (and) yesterday, I couldn't.
- 8- We (can't) write stories when we were younger.

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

استمع واكتب صح أم خطأ.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Hobbies are important because they help us relax and have fun. ()
- 2- When people play board games or solve puzzles, they don't learn teamwork. ()
- 3- When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience. ()
- 4- When they go cycling or skating, they stay weak. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- When I was a child, I run very fast.
a) can b) can't c) could d) is
- 2- He bought a helmet for safe
a) cycling b) fishing c) reading d) painting
- 3- We can't football today.
a) plays b) play c) playing d) played
- 4- We spent the evening playing games together.
a) board b) cycling c) painting d) running

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ واكمل.

(teamwork – skating – healthy – improve – unhealthy)

Hobbies are fun, free-time activities that bring joy. They are important because they help us relax and stay (1) They also help us learn skills like (2), problem-solving, patience, and creativity. When we practice our hobbies, we learn new things and (3) our skills. Some common hobbies are running, (4), fishing, and drawing. Life is more enjoyable when we have hobbies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

My name is Berry. Today, we are talking about our childhood at home. My parents had talents and hobbies when they were young. My father's favorite hobby was cycling. He could ride a bike fast, but he couldn't play basketball. My mother could write stories and

journals when she was ten. My brother couldn't skate on ice, but now, he can skate well. I could draw and paint beautiful pictures. I remember my best drawing of my family on my seventh birthday. My little sister is 3 years old. She loves singing.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Her mother could stories when she was ten.
a) cycle b) draw c) skate d) write
- 2- The underlined word "cycling" means riding a
a) bus b) bike c) car d) plane

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What could her father do?
.....
- 4- What does Berry remember?
.....
- 5- How old is her little sister?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

- 1- I - read - could - stories - I - when - eight - was .
.....
- 2- speak - I - can - well - very - English .
.....
- 3- hobbies - What - in - could - past - the - you - do ?
.....
- 4- could - but - She - couldn't - skate, - swim - she .
.....
- 5- people - Some - finish - quickly - today - can - puzzles .
.....
- 6- cycle - could - younger - was - He - when - he .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- She (can) read when she was four.
- 2- Yesterday, I (can't) open the door.
- 3- She (couldn't) swim now because she is sick.
- 4- She can (speaks) English.
- 5- He couldn't (found) his keys this morning.
- 6- They (can) swim last year.

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

He can t swim in the pool

.....

why do you think hobbies are important

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Hobbies"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "الهوايات".

(skating – painting – solving puzzles)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

arrangement	ترتيب / تنسيق	enjoyment	متعة
agreement	موافقة	discussion	مناقشة
excitement	حماس	leadership	قيادة / ريادة
membership	عضوية	friendship	صداقة

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

club	نادي	argument	مجادلة
classmate	زميل الفصل	playground	فناء
group	مجموعة	basketball	كرة السلة
student	تلميذ	library	مكتبة
art room	غرفة الفنون	reading corner	ركن القراءة
quick	سريع	own day	يوم خاص
solution	حل	manager	مدير
development	تطور / تنمية	movement	حركة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
decide to	يقرر أن	decided to		organize	ينظم	organized	
face	يواجه	faced		announce	يعلن	announced	
start	يبدأ / ينشئ	started		solve	يحل	solved	

Irregular verbs

lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	become	يصبح	became
meet	يقابل / يجتمع / يلتقي	met	grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

care for	يعتني بـ	her love for	حبها لـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	side by side	جنباً إلى جنب (معاً)
the solution worked	الحل نجح		

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The children jumped with when they saw the ice cream truck.
a) friendship b) enjoyment c) leadership d) excitement
- 2- Good is important for a team to succeed.
a) enjoyment b) leadership c) friendship d) excitement
- 3- I get a lot of from reading a good book.
a) friendship b) enjoyment c) leadership d) movement
- 4- The of the new project was announced by the manager.
a) agreement b) development c) excitement d) movement



Main Points :

- At school, a group of students decided to start a hobby club.
- في المدرسة، قررت مجموعة من التلاميذ أن يبدأوا نادي الهواية.
- Each student would share a special talent.
- كل تلميذ سيشارك موهبة مميزة.
- In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful paintings.
- في غرفة الفنون، عرضت سارة رسوماتها الجميلة.
- On the playground, Omar taught basketball skills.
- في الفناء، علم عمر مهارات كرة السلة.
- Laila organized a reading corner in the library.
- نظمت ليلي ركن القراءة في المكتبة.
- Kareem started a small garden, teaching the enjoyment of caring for plants.
- بدأ كريم حديقة صغيرة لتعليم متعة الاهتمام بالنباتات.
- Everyone wanted to meet at the same time, but they decided that each hobby would have its own day.
- الجميع أرادوا أن يتقابلوا في نفس الوقت، لكنهم قرروا أن كل هواية سيكون لها يومها الخاص.

Reading:

The School Hobby Club نادي الهوايات المدرسي

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

At our school, a group of students decided to start a Hobby Club. The arrangement was simple: each student would share a special talent. In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful paintings. Her friendship with Maya grew stronger as they painted side by side. On the playground, Omar taught basketball skills, and his excitement made others want to join. In the library, Laila organized a reading corner. Her love for reading made her classmates want to read more. Finally, Kareem started a small garden, teaching the enjoyment of caring for plants.

في مدرستنا، قررت مجموعة من الطلاب تأسيس نادياً للهوايات. كان الترتيب بسيطاً: كان كل طالب سيشترك بموهبة مميزة. في غرفة الفنون، عرضت سارة لوحاتها الجميلة، وتوطدت صداقتها مع مايا بينما كانتا ترسمان جنباً إلى جنب. في الملعب، علم عمر مهارات كرة السلة، وحماسه جعل الآخرين يريدون أن ينضموا. في المكتبة، نظمت ليلي ركناً للقراءة، وجبها للقراءة جعل زملاءها يريدون أن يقرأوا أكثر. أخيراً، أنشأ كريم حديقة صغيرة. ليعلم متعة العناية بالنباتات.

At first, the problem was that everyone wanted to meet at the same time. After a quick discussion, they had an agreement: each hobby would have its own day. The solution worked, and soon the Hobby Club became a place of leadership, creativity, and fun.

في البداية، كانت المشكلة أن الجميع أرادوا أن يجتمعوا في نفس الوقت. بعد نقاش سريع، توصلوا إلى اتفاق: تخصيص يوم لكل هواية. نجح الحل، وسرعان ما أصبح نادي الهوايات مكاناً للريادة والإبداع والفرح.

S.B 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Who taught basketball skills in the Hobby Club?
a) Sara b) Omar c) Maya d) Kareem
- 2 - What problem did the students face?
a) They had no classroom. b) They lost their tools.
c) They wanted to meet at the same time. d) They had no time.
- 3- Where did Sara and Maya paint together?
a) in the library b) in the art room
c) in the garden d) in the kitchen

S.B 2. Answer the following questions.

- 1- Why did the students want to start a Hobby Club?
.....
- 2- How did the students solve their problem?
.....

Suffix

اللاحقة

- هي حروف تضاف آخر الكلمة لتغير معناها أو لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

The suffix (ment)

تحول اللاحقة (ment) الفعل إلى اسم

enjoy	يستمتع	→	enjoyment	متعة
move	يتحرك	→	movement	حركة
excite	يحمس	→	excitement	حماسة
agree	يوافق	→	agreement	موافقة
argue	يجادل	→	argument	مجادلة

The suffix (ship)

تحول اللاحقة (ship) الاسم إلى اسم آخر

friend	صديق	→	friendship	الصدقة
leader	قائد	→	leadership	القيادة
member	عضو	→	membership	العضوية

Tip

- عند إضافة (ship / ment) إلى الكلمات يكون المقطع المشدد على أصل الكلمة وليس اللاحقة.

Ex: - En-joy-ment

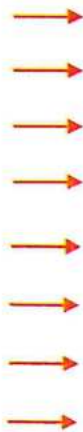
- FRIEND-ship

Check your Vocab.

Add the suitable suffix to each word.

أضف اللاحقة المناسبة لكل كلمة.

- 1- excite
- 2- leader
- 3- move
- 4- friend
- 5- enjoy
- 6- member
- 7- argue
- 8- agree



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exercises

Lesson 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

استمع واكتب صح أم خطأ.
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- At our school, students decided to start a party. ()
- 2- Each student shared a talent. ()
- 3- In the computer room, Sara painted. ()
- 4- Omar taught basketball skills. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The teacher made special for the class trip.
a) colors b) arrangements c) opinions d) lessons
- 2- The team jumped in after scoring the final goal.
a) silence b) excitement c) anger d) sadness
- 3- She spends her mornings the plants in the garden.
a) forgetting b) hiding c) caring for d) breaking
- 4- Our group helped us share ideas.
a) movie b) discussion c) snack d) race
- 5- Good helps a group work together.
a) leadership b) breakfast c) rain d) homework
- 6- I my paintings for the class yesterday.
a) show b) showing c) showed d) shows
- 7- I could basketball skills.
a) learn b) learned c) learns d) learnt

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Our class decided to start a Helper Team. The arrangement was simple: everyone would help the teacher. Mia showed how to clean the boards. Her friendship with Genny grew stronger as they worked. Ben taught others how to organize books. His excitement made more students want to help. Anna loved reading, so she

a quiet corner, showing her care for books. The first problem was that too many people wanted to do all the jobs at the same time. After a short discussion, they reached an agreement. They made a schedule so each job had its own time. This solution worked well. Soon, the Helper Team brought leadership, creativity, and fun to our classroom.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The class to start a Helper Team.
a) asked b) decided c) watched d) forgot
- 2- After a short, the students reached an agreement.
a) silence b) lunch c) discussion d) reading

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why did the students need to have a discussion?
.....
- 4- Who organized a quiet reading corner?
.....
- 5- What's the main idea of the text?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

- 1- How - the - solve - did - students - problems - their ?
.....
- 2- organized - Laila - the - corner - reading - library - in the .
.....
- 3- student - Each - share - will - talent - special - a .
.....
- 4- side - Reem - by - and - Mona - painted - side .
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- She felt a lot of (enjoy) while reading her favorite book.
- 2- Good (lead) can guide a team to success.
- 3- I (can) read stories when I was six.
- 4- Their (friend) grew stronger after the summer camp.
- 5- She felt a sudden (move) in the water while swimming.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

what problem did the students face

omar shared basketball skills on the playground

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"The Hobby Club"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "نادي الهوايات".

(creativity - excitement - reading)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

step	خطوة	interests	اهتمامات
moment	لحظة	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية
truly	حقاً	keyboard	بيانو
music	موسيقى	guitar	جيتار
art	فن / الرسم	gardening	البستنة
nature	طبيعة	seed	بذرة
soil	تربة	learning	التعلم
pot	إناء	even	حتى
immediately	في الحال	paints	ألوان
progress	تقدم		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
try	يحاول / يجرب	tried		match	يلائم / يناسب	matched	
follow	يتبع	followed		need	يحتاج	needed	
achieve	يحقق	achieved		collect	يجمع	collected	

Irregular verbs

take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took	get	يحصل على	got
begin	يبدأ	began			

Adjectives

الصفات

exciting	مثير	great	رائع
better	أفضل	easy	سهل
perfect	مثالي / متقن	single	مفرد

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

think about	يفكر بشأن	decide on	يختار
take time	يستغرق وقت	at first	في البداية / أولاً
step by step	خطوة بخطوة		

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Practice your hobby (step - soil) by step.
- 2- Football (matches - tries) my interests. I like movement.
- 3- I like growing plants. My hobby is (moment - gardening).
- 4- The keyboard is a musical (progress - instrument).
- 5- You must work hard to (collect - achieve) your dreams.
- 6- Take a (moment - soil) to think about your needs.



Main Points

- Starting a new hobby brings you enjoyment.
- بدء هواية جديدة يجلب لك المتعة.
- A hobby helps build strong friendship with others.
- الهواية تساعد في بناء صداقة قوية مع الآخرين.
- To start a hobby, take a moment to think about what you love.
- لكي تبدأ هواية، خذ لحظة لتفكر بشأن ما تحب.
- Choose a hobby that matches your interests.
- اختر هواية تناسب اهتماماتك.
- If you decide on music, you might need a musical instrument.
- إذا اخترت الموسيقى ربما تحتاج آلة موسيقية.
- If you choose gardening, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot.
- إذا اخترت البستنة، سوف تحتاج بذور وتربة واطييص صغير.
- Don't try to be perfect immediately; learning takes time.
- لا تحاول أن تكون ممتاز في الحال، التعلم يستغرق وقت.
- Practice your hobby step by step to see your progress and enjoy what you achieved.
- مارس هوايتك خطوة بخطوة لترى تقدمك و استمتع بما حققت.

Reading: Steps to Start a Hobby

خطوات لبدء هواية

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Do you want to try something exciting and new? Starting a great hobby is easy! **It brings** you enjoyment and helps build strong friendship with others. Follow these four simple steps:

هل ترغب بتجربة شيء جديد ومثير؟ بدء هواية رائعة أمر سهل! فهي تمنحك المتعة وتساعدك على بناء صداقات متينة مع الآخرين. اتبع هذه الخطوات الأربع البسيطة:

First, take a moment to think about what you truly love. What makes you happy in your free time? Do you like music, art, nature, or movement? Choose a hobby that matches your interests, like drawing, reading, or cycling.

أولاً، خذ لحظة للتفكير فيما تحبه حقاً. ما الذي يسعدك في وقت فراغك؟ هل تحب الموسيقى، الفن، الطبيعة، أم الحركة؟ اختر هواية تتناسب مع اهتماماتك، مثل الرسم، القراءة، أو ركوب الدراجات.

Next, it's time to get the things you need to begin. If **you decide** on music, you might need an instrument like a small keyboard or guitar. If you choose gardening, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot.

بعد ذلك، حان وقت تجهيز الأدوات اللازمة للبدء. إذا اخترت الموسيقى، فقد تحتاج إلى آلة موسيقية مثل البيانو أو الجيتار. أما إذا اخترت البستنة، فستحتاج إلى بذور وتربة وإناء صغير.

Then, start practicing your new hobby! Don't try to be perfect immediately; learning takes time. Play simple songs at first, or plant a small seed in a single pot. After that, practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing progress.

ثم ابدأ ممارسة هوايتك الجديدة! لا تحاول أن تكون متقناً فوراً! فالتعلم يحتاج إلى وقت. ابدأ بعزف أغان بسيطة، أو ازرع بذرة صغيرة في أصيص. بعد ذلك، مارس هوايتك خطوة بخطوة لتلاحظ تقدمك المذهل.

Finally, enjoy what you achieved! Show your music to your family, or share a picture of your growing plant with a friend. Hobbies make life exciting and fun, and sharing your excitement makes it even better!

وأخيراً، استمتع بما أنجزت! شارك موسيقتك مع عائلتك، أو شارك صورة نبتتك وهي تنمو مع صديق. الهوايات تجعل الحياة ممتعة ومثيرة، ومشاركة حماسك يجعلها أفضل!



المضارع البسيط

I, We, They, You + inf

He, She, It + (inf + s / es / ies)

Answer the following questions.

1- What is the first step to start a new hobby?

2- What do you need if you choose gardening?

3- How can you enjoy what you achieved?

Remember

Sequencing words كلمات التسلسل

- تستخدم للتحدث عن خطوات فعل شيء معين أو أحداث.

First, أولاً **Next,** ثم **Then,** تالياً

After that, بعد ذلك **Finally,** في النهاية

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

استمع واكتب صح أم خطأ.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- I love spending time in nature.

()

2- I decided on gardening.

()

3- I brought some seeds, some soil, and a big pot.

()

4- I enjoyed what I achieved.

()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- She decided to plant a small in a single pot on her balcony.

a) hobby

b) problem

c) seed

d) meal

2- your hobby step by step to see your amazing progress.

a) Sleep

b) Practice

c) Eat

d) Drink

3- The guitar is my favorite musical

a) instrument

b) sandwich

c) holiday

d) flower

4- You should choose a hobby that your interests.

a) melts

b) matches

c) makes

d) takes

Unit 1

5- Your hobby you enjoyment.

- a) bring b) brings c) bringing d) bright

6- You gardening.

- a) loves b) love c) loving d) loved

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ واكمل. (practice – drawing – hobby – free – music)

To start a new hobby, first, decide what makes you happy in your (1)..... time. Next, choose a (2)..... that you like, such as (3)..... or reading. Then, get the supplies you need, like books or paints. After that, (4)..... your hobby and try to get better. Finally, share your hobby and your achievements with others.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Planning a trip is fun. It brings excitement and enjoyment. Follow these four steps: First, decide what you want to see. Choose a place that matches your interests. Do you like mountains or city sights? Next, get your travel things ready. You need tickets and a place to stay. Collect maps and information. Then, start making simple plans. Read a small book about the place. Check your trip plan. Small steps now make the trip better later. Finally, enjoy your time. Share your photos with your family. Your excitement makes the whole trip better!

A Choose the correct answer.

1- describes the feelings besides enjoyment.

- a) Fear b) Stress c) Anger d) Excitement

2- Planning a trip is

- a) boring b) bad c) fun d) old

B Answer the following questions.

3- What do you need to do first?

4- What do you need to collect?

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

1- What - you - happy - makes - your - free - in - time ?

2- your - Share - hobby - your - with - family .

3- new - you - Do - want - to try - something ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1- Don't (trying) to be perfect immediately. Learning takes time.

2- Next, it's time to (gets) the things you need to begin.

3- Do you (likes) music, art, nature, or movement?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم.

could you play the guitar at school right now

start practicing your hobby

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Steps to start a new hobby"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " خطوات لبدء هواية جديدة " .

(enjoy - first - practice)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

survey	استبيان / استطلاع	models	نماذج
comics	قصص هزلية	cooking	الطهي
movies	أفلام	baking	الخبز
cartoons	أفلام الكرتون	stamps	طوابع بريدية
crafts	أعمال يدوية	card	بطاقة
rarely	نادراً	alone	وحيد / بمفرده
whenever	وقتها / عندما	brush	فرشاة
typically	بالعادة	outdoors	بالخارج
musician	موسيقيار	truck	شاحنة
two-wheeled vehicle	مركبة بعجلتين		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
afford	يوفر / يتيح	afforded		succeed	ينجح	succeeded	

What is survey?

A survey is a group of questions that people answer to share their ideas, opinions, or experiences. It's time to do a fun survey about your hobbies. This will help you learn more about each other and maybe even find friends who like the same things as you do!

الاستبيان عبارة عن مجموعة من الأسئلة التي يجيب عليها الناس لمشاركة أفكارهم وآرائهم وتجاربهم. حان الوقت لإجراء استبيان ممتع حول هواياتكم. سيساعدكم هذا على التعرف على بعضكم البعض بشكل أفضل، وربما حتى العثور على أصدقاء يشاركونكم نفس الاهتمامات!

1. Which of these hobbies do you enjoy the most? (Check all that you like)

1. Reading stories or comics
2. Playing sports (football, basketball, swimming, etc.)
3. Drawing or painting
4. Playing video games
5. Watching movies or cartoons
6. Playing a musical instrument (piano, guitar, drums, etc.)
7. Singing
8. Building things (crafts, puzzles, models)
9. Gardening or taking care of plants
10. Cooking or baking
11. Collecting items (stamps, cards, toys, etc.)
12. Other:

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2. How often do you spend time on your favorite hobby?

1. Every day ☐
2. A few times a week ☐
3. Only on weekends ☐
4. Rarely ☐

☐
☐

3. Do you prefer hobbies that you do:

1. Alone ☐
2. With friends ☐
3. With family ☐

☐

4. When do you usually perform your hobbies?

1. After school ☐
2. On weekends ☐
3. During holidays ☐
4. Whenever I have free time ☐

☐
☐

5. Where do you usually perform your hobbies?

1. At home ☐
2. Outdoors / in the park ☐
3. At school ☐
4. At a club or special class ☐

☐
☐

6. Which hobby would you like to learn or try in the future?

.....

7. Check all that you like about your hobby.

1. It helps me relax ☐
2. It makes me happy ☐
3. I can do it with friends or family ☐
4. I get better with practice ☐
5. It makes me feel proud ☐

☐
☐

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- We did a to share our ideas and opinions.
a) hobby b) survey c) talent d) stamp
- 2- Reading makes me happy.
a) comics b) games c) vehicle d) crafts
- 3- The performed quiet music.
a) swimmer b) survey c) gardener d) musician
- 4- You can if you practice a lot.
a) succeed b) succeeded c) succeeds d) success
- 5- When he was young, he couldn't a bicycle.
a) afford b) afforded c) affording d) affords
- 6- Cycling is typically done on a two-wheeled
a) guitar b) truck c) vehicle d) car

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ واكمل.
(stories – cartoons – Cooking – relax – family)

My name is Ahmed. My favorite hobbies are reading (1) and cooking. I practice reading every day before bedtime. I like reading short stories. (2) makes me happy. I cook lunch only on weekends. I prefer doing it with my (3) Practicing my favorite hobbies helps me (4) and feel proud.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- I like (watch) cartoons.
- 2- Gardening (help) me relax.
- 3- She could (solving) puzzles.
- 4- When I was younger, I (could) play music, but now, I can.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. رتب الجمل.

1- play - instruments - She - musical - can - three .

2- hobbies - When - perform - your - do - you ?

3- plants - like - I - care - taking - of .

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم.

how often do you spend time reading

i like collecting stamps and cards

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your favorite hobby".

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "هوايتك المفضلة".

(sports – weekends – friends)

Review on unit

1

Important vocabulary

solving puzzles
cycling
skating
painting
crafting
piano
board games
singing
talent
hobby
creative
talent show
solution
step
moment
immediately
progress
interests
musical instrument
gardening
comics
cartoons

حل الألغاز
ركوب الدراجة
التزلج
الرسم / التلوين
الأعمال اليدوية
بيانو
ألعاب لوحية
الغناء
موهبة
هواية
مبدع
عرض المواهب
حل
خطوة
لحظة
في الحال
تقدم
اهتمامات
آلة موسيقية
البستنة
قصص هزلية
أفلام كرتون

free time
schoolwork
activities
teamwork
patience
energetic
required
success
concert
chores
arrangement
movement
excitement
agreement
enjoyment
argument
development
leadership
membership
friendship
discussion
musician

وقت الفراغ
أعمال مدرسية
أنشطة
عمل جماعي
الصبر
حيوي / نشيط
مطلوب
النجاح
حفلة موسيقي
أعمال منزلية
ترتيب
حركة
حماس
موافقة
متعة
مجادلة
تطور
قيادة
عضوية
صداقة
مناقشة
موسيقار

Important verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
remember	يتذكر	remembered		count	يعد	counted	
skip	يتخطى	skipped		matter	يهم	mattered	
earn	يكسب	earned		suggest	يقترح	suggested	
practice	يمارس	practiced		organize	ينظم	organized	
match	يناسب	matched		achieve	يحقق	achieved	
afford	يتيح	afforded		succeed	ينجح	succeeded	

Irregular verbs

ride	يركب	rode	spend	يقضي	spent
forget	ينسى	forgot	choose	يختار	chose
draw	يرسم	drew	lose	يفقد	lost
become	يصبح	became	begin	يبدأ	began

Important paragraphs

Hobby talent show

I am Asser. We will have a "Hobby Talent Show class" in our school next week. My friend Ali likes singing, so he will sing a nice song. My friend Reem will play music on the guitar. Some students will share their skills in painting and drawing. I like crafting with paper. My favorite hobby is story writing. So I decided to share a story about our talents. Our hobbies make us special.

Hobbies

Hobbies are activities we love to do in our free time and bring us joy. Hobbies help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. We learn teamwork and problem-solving when we play board games or solve puzzles. We practice patience and creativity when we sing or play the piano. When we go cycling or skating, we stay strong and energetic. In the past, children could spend more time outside running, skating, and fishing. Hobbies are not only fun, but they also make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

A hobby club

At school, a group of students decided to start a hobby club. Each student would share a special talent. In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful paintings. On the playground, Omar taught basketball skills. Laila organized a reading corner in the library. Kareem started a small garden, teaching the enjoyment of caring for plants. Everyone wanted to meet at the same time, but they decided that each hobby would have its own day.

Starting a new hobby

Starting a new hobby brings you enjoyment. A hobby helps build strong friendship with others. To start a hobby, take a moment to think about what you love. Choose a hobby that matches your interests. If you decide on music, you might need a musical instrument. If you choose gardening, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot. Don't try to be perfect immediately; learning takes time. Practice your hobby step by step to see your progress and enjoy what you achieved.

Language

present المضارع

Sub + **can** + inf
can't

Ex: - She **can** play the piano.
- They **can't** skate.

past الماضي

Sub + **could** + inf
couldn't

Ex: - I **could** read stories when I was six.
- She **couldn't** draw when she was younger.

Top students.

Complete the sentences with "can", "can't", "could", "couldn't".

- 1- I play the piano now, but last year I
- 2- She swim when she was five, but now, she swim well.
- 3- They ride their bikes today, but when they were young, they balance.
- 4- We play board games together yesterday because we had no time.
- 5- He sing very well now, but when he was younger, he
- 6- He play the piano when he was younger, it was hard.

General Test on unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Choose a hobby that matches your interests. ()
- 2- Don't try to be perfect immediately. ()
- 3- Play simple songs at first, or plant a small seed in a single pot. ()
- 4- After that, don't practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing progress. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- He likes to go on ice.
a) swimming b) dancing c) skating d) painting
- 2- I can puzzles.
a) solve b) solved c) solving d) solves
- 3- They made an to meet at the café at 5 p.m.
a) agreement b) excitement c) membership d) enjoyment
- 4- When I was a child, I ride a bike.
a) could b) can c) do d) can't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(teamwork - relax - free - skills - paintings)

Hobbies are enjoyable activities that we enjoy doing in our (1)..... time. They bring joy. They are important because they help us (2)....., stay healthy, and learn skills like (3)..... and problem-solving. Hobbies increase patience and creativity. They show how we grow and improve our (4)..... Hobbies are fun and make us smarter and happier.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My friends and I have amazing hobbies and talents! Next week, we'll have a "Show-and-Tell day" to share our hobbies. Dalia wants to show her colorful drawings and paintings, and also some easy paper crafts. Saja will sing and play the guitar for her performance. On weekends, Dalia likes riding her bike outside. She also enjoys coloring and playing card games with her parents. Rania loves writing short stories and journals. Hobbies are great because they make us special and help us share joy with friends.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- On , Dalia likes riding her bike outside.
a) Sunday b) Monday c) weekends d) Friday
- 2- The opposite of the underlined word "easy" is
a) new b) difficult c) modern d) bad

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Who loves writing little stories and journals?
.....
- 4- Why are hobbies great?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- He can't (finishing) the homework alone.
- 2- She (can't) go to school because she was sick.



6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- I - read- when - could - stories - I - seven - was .

.....

2- showed - Fatma - her - paintings - beautiful - her friend - to .

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

my favorite hobbies are skating and cycling

.....

Where did sara and Maya paint together

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your favorite hobby"

(cycling - excitement - solving puzzles)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Hobbies help us relax, have fun, and stay
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) unsafe d) unhappy
- 2- When people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn
a) lonely b) teamwork c) lessons d) food
- 3- When they go cycling or skating, they stay and energetic.
a) bad b) ugly c) strong d) slow

2 Read and complete the dialog.

(painting - singing - hobby - share)

Teacher: Next week, we'll have a "Hobby Talent Show class". Who wants to (1)..... their hobby?

Dalia : Me! I'll show my drawing and (2).....

Younis : That sounds fun! I think I'll perform by playing the piano and (3)..... a song.

Nour : Story writing is my (4)..... I sometimes write stories or journals.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- He spends his weekend pictures.
a) playing b) cycling c) painting d) writing
- 2- He can English well
a) speaks b) speaking c) spoke d) speak
- 3- Good is important for a team to succeed.
a) argument b) agreement c) leadership d) enjoyment
- 4- I take photos when I was ten.
a) can b) can't c) could d) is

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1- He could swim, and he couldn't cycle. (.....)
- 2- I could solve puzzles now. (.....)
- 3- He can also makes some crafting with paper. (.....)
- 4- When she was four, she can't read stories. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Learning a new skill is fun and useful. It helps you feel happy and smart. It also helps you use your time in a good way. First, think about what you like to do in your free time. Next, choose a skill you enjoy and feel excited to learn. Trying something new can help you discover your talents. Then, get the things you need to start. After that, practice a little every day and do not worry about mistakes. Learning step by step makes you better each time. Practice helps you become more creative. Finally, enjoy your progress and share what you learn with others.

A Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Trying something new can help you discover your talents. ()
- 2- You should worry a lot about mistakes when learning a new skill. ()

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 3- Practice helps you become more
a) creative b) nervous c) lazy d) angry
- 4- First, think about what you like to do in your time.
a) free b) busy c) school d) sleepy
- 5- Learning step by step makes you each time.
a) worse b) better c) tired d) bored

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:
"Your favorite hobby"

(talent - painting - crafting - enjoyment)

.....

.....

.....

.....

At the Doctor's

في العيادة

Unit two



Objectives

Vocabulary :

- headache, sore throat, cough, stomachache, waiting room, examination room, fever, serious, pharmacy, medicine, first aid kit, accidents, bandages, plasters, scissors, permission, dangerous, treatment donate, receptionist, check-in, donations

Language in Use :

- Modal Verbs:
(Have - Has) / (Have to - Has to) (Must-Mustn't)

Life Skills :

- Decision-making-Responsibility

Core Value :

- Respect
- Health Awareness

Integrated Learning Activities :

- Healthy Hero Bookmark

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

headache	صداع	pharmacy	صيدلية
examination room	حجرة الفحص	check-up	فحص طبي
sore throat	إلتهاب الحلق	medicine	دواء
stomachache	ألم المعدة	cough	كحة / سعال
serious	خطير	fever	حمى

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

high blood pressure	ارتفاع ضغط الدم	clinic	عيادة
toothache	ألم بالأسنان	sick	مريض
a broken leg	رجل مكسورة	doctor	طبيب
warm liquids	سوائل دافئة	tired	متعب
ice cream	آيس كريم	body	جسم
quickly	بسرعة	soon	قريبًا
advice	نصيحة		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
visit	يزور	visited		check up	يفحص	checked up	
rest	يرتاح	rested		hope	يأمل	hoped	

Irregular verbs

hurt	يؤلم / يؤذي	hurt	يشرب	drank
have / has	يملك / لديه	had	يأخذ	took

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	a little weak	ضعيف / متعب قليلاً
look well	يبدو جيدًا	take care of	يعتني بـ
What's wrong?	ما المشكلة / ما بك؟	stay healthy	يبقى صحيًا
feel sick	يشعر بالمرض	see the doctor	يزور الطبيب

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

- 1- I went to the because I have a fever.
a) school b) restaurant c) clinic d) park
- 2- My father went to the and bought the medicine.
a) garden b) school c) pharmacy d) clinic
- 3- The doctor asked me to and drink warm liquids.
a) play b) run c) watch d) rest
- 4- My mother's head hurts. She has a
a) headache b) broken leg c) toothache d) fever
- 5- You should listen to the doctor's
a) headache b) advice c) liquid d) serious



Main Points

- Fady feels so tired. His body hurts. فادي يشعر بالتعب الشديد. جسده يؤلمه.
- He has a headache and a cough. He also has a sore throat and a fever. هو عنده صداع وكحة. هو عنده أيضاً التهاب في الحلق وحمى.
- He goes with his mother to the doctor. يذهب مع أمه إلى الطبيب.
- At the clinic, he goes into the examination room. في العيادة، يدخل إلى غرفة الفحص.
- The doctor tells him that he is a little weak, but it's not serious. أخبره الطبيب أنه ضعيف بعض الشيء، لكن الأمر ليس خطيراً.
- He must rest and drink warm liquids. He mustn't eat ice cream. يجب أن يرتاح ويشرب سوائل دافئة. لا يجب أن يأكل آيس كريم.
- Fady and his mother go to the pharmacy to get his medicine. يذهب فادي و أمه إلى الصيدلية لكي يحضروا دواءه.
- Fady hopes he will feel better quickly. فادي يأمل أن يشعر بتحسن سريعاً.

Reading : Fady's Check-Up

الفحص الطبي لفادي

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Fady : Ah... I feel so tired. My body hurts.

فادي : آه... أشعر بتعب شديد. جسمي يؤلمني.

Mother: You don't look well, Fady. What's wrong?

الأم : لا تبدو بخير، يا فادي. ما بك؟

Fady : I have a headache and a cough. I also have a sore throat and a fever.

فادي : أنا عندي صداع وسعال. عندي أيضاً التهاب في الحلق وحمى.

Mother: Oh no! We have to go to the doctor.

الأم : أوه لا علينا الذهاب إلى الطبيب .

At the clinic

في العيادة

Nurse : Hello, Fady. Please come to the examination room.

الممرضة: أهلاً، فادي. تفضل إلى غرفة الفحص.

Doctor : Well, Fady, how are you feeling today?

الدكتور : حسناً يا فادي. كيف حالك اليوم؟

Fady : Not good, Doctor. I have a headache and a cough.

فادي : ليس جيداً يا دكتور. عندي صداع وسعال.

Doctor : You look a little weak, but it's not serious. You must rest and drink warm liquids. No ice cream for three days.

الطبيب : تبدو متعباً قليلاً، لكن الأمر ليس خطيراً. يجب عليك أن تستريح و تشرب سوائل دافئة. ممنوع الآيس كريم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.

Fady : Oh no! But I love ice cream!

فادي : اوه لا! لكنني أحب الآيس كريم!

Doctor : I know, but you have to take care of yourself. You'll feel better soon.

الطبيب : أعلم، لكن عليك أن تعتني بنفسك. ستشعر بتحسن قريباً.

Mother: Thank you, Doctor. Now, Fady, let's go to the pharmacy to get your medicine.

الأم : شكراً لك، يا دكتور. الآن يا فادي، لنذهب إلى الصيدلية لنحضر دوائك.

Fady : I hope I feel better quickly. I must take my medicine and rest.

فادي : أتمنى أن أتحسن سريعاً. يجب أن أتناول دوائي وأرتاح.

Quick Tips

- تستخدم (have / has) للتحدث عن الأمراض:
I / We / You / They جمع + have (a / an)
He / She / It مفرد + has (a / an)

S.B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Why did Fady's mother take him to the clinic?
 - a) because he wanted ice cream
 - b) because he felt sick
 - c) because he wanted to visit a friend
 - d) because he likes the clinic
- 2- What advice did the doctor give Fady?
 - a) to eat ice cream
 - b) to go to the park
 - c) to rest and drink warm liquids
 - d) to do his homework
- 3- What was one of the things that made Fady feel sick?
 - a) a toothache
 - b) a broken leg
 - c) high blood pressure
 - d) a sore throat
- 4- Where did Fady and his mother go after seeing the doctor?
 - a) to the park
 - b) to school
 - c) to the pharmacy
 - d) to a restaurant

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- My brother had a cough. ()
- 2- He went to the clinic with our mom. ()
- 3- The doctor advised him to rest and take the medicine. ()
- 4- He must drink cold water. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My grandparents are very sick. They are the doctor.
 - a) see
 - b) seeing
 - c) saw
 - d) sees
- 2- The doctor asked me to take and rest.
 - a) hospital
 - b) medicine
 - c) room
 - d) school

3- Doctors check patients at the room.

- a) pharmacy b) library c) school d) examination

4- He has a sore throat. He must drink liquids.

- a) cold b) boil c) warm d) hard

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! I'm Amr. Last holiday, my brother Eiad was very tired. He had a cough and a sore throat. We went to the doctor. He examined him and gave him medicine. He asked him to take a rest. We went to the pharmacy and bought the medicine. When we arrived home, my mother made him a warm liquid. He drank it and took the medicine to feel better quickly. Finally, he went to bed to rest. Now, he looks well and doesn't have a cough.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to

- a) Amr b) Eiad c) mother d) doctor

2- They bought medicine at the

- a) doctor b) hospital c) pharmacy d) school

B Answer the following.

3- How did his mother help him?

.....

4- How is Amr's brother now?

.....

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- to - examination - Please - room - come - the.

.....

Unit 2

2- yourself - You - of - have - care - to - take .

3- quickly - I - feel - better - I - hope .

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- My mother (have) a headache.

2- My parents (has) a cough and a stomachache.

3- How are you (feel) today?

4- I (take) my medicine and rested yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following.

I have a headache and a cough

what's wrong with you, my friend

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"At a clinic"

(examination room - cough - medicine)

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

nurse	ممرضة	cuts	جروح
first aid kit	حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية	bruises	كدمات
bandage	ضمادة	injured	مصاب
plaster	لاصق جروح	permission	إذن
scissors	مقص	accident	حادثة

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

waiting room	حجرة الإنتظار	ready	جاهز
everything	كل شيء	dangerous	خطير
careful	حريص	clean	نظيف
inside	داخل	full	ممتلئ
safely	بأمان	parents	الوالدين
heavy	ثقيل	habit	عادة
danger	خطر	office	مكتب
candy	حلوى	locked	مغلق
without	بدون	harm	ضرر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
ignore	يتجاهل	ignored		protect	يحمي	protected	
call	يتصل	called		open	يفتح	opened	
cover	يغطي	covered		help	يساعد	helped	
avoid	يتجنب	avoided		worry	يقلق	worried	

Irregular verbs

know	يعرف	knew	bring	يحضّر / يجلب	brought
give	يعطي	gave	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

get hurt	يصاب/ يتعرض للأذى	stay safe	يبقى بأمان
right away	في الحال	be careful	كن حذرًا
make sure	يتأكد	plenty of	الكثير من



Main Points

- At our school, there is a big first aid kit in the nurse's room.
في مدرستنا، يوجد حقيبة إسعافات أولية كبيرة في حجرة الممرضة.
- Inside it, there are bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises.
بداخله يوجد ضمادات ولصقات ومقص ودواء للجروح والكدمات.
- Students must tell a teacher or the nurse when someone is injured.
يجب على الطلاب أن يخبروا المعلم أو الممرضة عندما يتعرض شخص للإصابة.
- We mustn't open the first aid kit without permission.
يجب ألا نفتح حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية بدون إذن.
- Nurses must make sure the kit is always clean, ready, and full.
يجب على الممرضين أن يتأكدوا أن حقيبة الإسعافات دائمًا نظيفة وجاهزة وممتلئة.
- Nurses must call parents if a student feels too sick.
يجب أن تخطر الممرضات الآباء إذا كان الطالب يشعر بمرض شديد.
- The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe.
حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية تساعد كل شخص أن يبقى بأمان.
- We must be careful and play safely, so we don't get hurt!
يجب أن نكون حذرين ونلعب بأمان حتى لا نتعرض للأذى!

Check your Vocab.

S.B Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(safe - nurse - careful - first aid - ready)

1. At our school, there's a big kit in the nurse's room.
2. Students must tell a teacher or the when someone is injured.
3. Nurses have to make sure the kit is always clean,, and full.
4. The first aid kit helps everyone stay at school.
5. We must all remember to be and play safely, so we don't get hurt.

Reading : The First Aid Kit at School

حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية في المدرسة

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

At our school, there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room. It has everything we might need for small accidents. Inside, there are bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises.

في مدرستنا: توجد حقيبة إسعافات أولية كبيرة في غرفة الممرضة. تحتوي على كل ما قد نحتاجه للحوادث البسيطة. بداخلها ضمادات، ولصقات جروح، ومقص، وأدوية للجروح والكدمات.

If a student gets hurt, the nurse has to check the first aid kit and help them right away. Students must tell a teacher or the nurse when someone is injured. We mustn't open the first aid kit without permission because some things inside can be dangerous.

إذا أصيب طالب، يجب على الممرضة فحص حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية ومساعدته فوراً. يجب على الطلاب إبلاغ المعلم أو الممرضة عند تعرض أي طالب لإصابة. لا يجب فتح حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن، لأن بعض محتوياتها قد تكون خطيرة.

Nurses must make sure the kit is always clean, ready, and full. They also must call parents if a student feels too sick. Students don't have to worry, because the nurse always knows how to help.

يجب على الممرضات التأكد من أن حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية نظيفة وجاهزة وممتلئة دائماً. كما يجب عليهن الاتصال بأولياء الأمور إذا شعر أي طالب بمرض شديد. لا يجب على الطلاب القلق، فالممرضة تعرف دائماً كيف تساعد.

The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school – but we must all remember to be careful and play safely so we don't get hurt!

تساعد حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية الجميع على البقاء آمنين في المدرسة، لكن يجب علينا جميعاً أن نكون حذرين ونلعب بأمان حتى لا نتعرض للأذى!

S.B 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- Where is the big first aid kit at school?

- a) in the classroom
- b) in the nurse's room
- c) in the playground
- d) in the teacher's office

2- What must students do when someone gets hurt?

- a) help the student by themselves
- b) ignore it and keep playing
- c) tell a teacher or the nurse
- d) take the first aid kit

3- Why mustn't students open the first aid kit without permission?

- a) because it's locked
- b) because it can be dangerous
- c) because it's only for teachers
- d) because it's too heavy

S.B 2. Answer the following questions.

- 1- Why do you think it's important to have a first aid kit at school?
.....
- 2- What can you do to help your friends stay safe and avoid accidents at school?
.....

Language

Modal verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

must يجب

- We use **must** for very important rules. - تستخدم للقواعد الهامة جداً.
- We use **mustn't** for something not allowed. - تستخدم لشيء غير مسموح.

+ Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

Sub + **must** + inf يجب أن

Ex: - You **must** drink water.

- Negative الجملة المنفية

Sub + **mustn't** + inf لا يجب أن

Ex: - You **mustn't** eat too much candy.

have to يجب / يضطر أن

- We use **have to** for something necessary. - تستخدم للأشياء الضرورية.
- We use **don't have to** for something not necessary. - تستخدم لشيء غير ضروري.

+ Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

Sub + **have to** + inf يجب / يضطر أن

Ex: - Students **have to** wash their hands.

- Negative الجملة المنفية

Sub + **don't have to** + inf لا يجب / ليس من الضروري

Ex: - You **don't have to** worry about small cuts.

- لاحظ أن: **have to / don't have to** تأتي مع الفاعل الجمع و **I**.

Check your Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- A patient (**mustn't**) see the doctor when they are sick.
- 2- She (**mustn't**) follow school rules.
- 3- You (**don't have**) to wash your hands before meals.
- 4- They must (**eats**) healthy food.
- 5- Sandy (**must**) eat too many sweets.
- 6- You have (**wears**) the school uniform at school.
- 7- You are very ill. You (**mustn't**) take medicine.
- 8- You (**isn't**) have to sleep early. It's a holiday.
- 9- They don't (**must**) to walk to school.
- 10- She mustn't (**drinking**) dirty water.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- You wash the cuts.
a) have b) must c) mustn't d) don't have
- 2- The students to be quiet at the library.
a) have b) don't have c) must d) mustn't
- 3- I have my homework every day.
a) does b) doing c) do d) to do
- 4- You mustn't It's very dangerous.
a) smokes b) smoke c) smoking d) to smoke
- 5- We finish the project now because there is more time.
a) must b) has to c) don't have to d) have to

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I went to the room to bring the first aid kit.
a) teacher's b) nurse's c) engineer's d) baker's
- 2- You come to school late.
a) must b) have c) mustn't d) hasn't
- 3- The first aid kit can help with your cuts and
a) teach b) bruises c) learn d) hospital
- 4- You have a taxi when you are late.
a) took b) taking c) to take d) takes
- 5- You can't use the first aid kit without
a) permission b) baby c) child d) book
- 6- He study engineering to be an engineer.
a) must b) has c) have d) mustn't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(bruises – study – bandage – hurt – aid)

Last week, we were playing in the school playground. My friend fell and (1)..... his hand. We went to the nurse's room to help him. She opened a big first (2)..... kit. She cleaned the cut and put a (3)..... on it. She also had some medicine for (4)..... . My friend felt better. We thanked her for her help.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

At our school, there is a large first aid kit in the nurse's room. She might use it for small accidents. It contains bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises. When a student is injured, the nurse checks the kit and helps immediately. Students must tell the teacher or the nurse about injuries. Students mustn't open the kit without permission because some items are not safe. Nurses keep it clean, full, and ready. They have to call parents if needed and make sure everyone stays safe.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined words "not safe" mean
 a) calm b) dangerous c) careful d) locked
- 2- The helps us when we have cuts or bruises.
 a) teacher b) vet c) baker d) nurse

B Answer the following.

- 3- What mustn't students do?

- 4- What does the first aid kit contain?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- aid - at - Where - kit - is - the first - school ?

- 2- cover - We - our mouth - we - must - cough - when .

- 3- the kit - clean - sure - Nurses - make - is - must .

- 4- every - day - teeth - You - brush - your - must .

- 5- don't - You - have - bring - to - a lunchbox - today .

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 - She (must) sleep late.
- 2 - My brothers (has to) come to school.
- 3 - You must (drinks) water every day.

Unit 2

- 4- You have (is) healthy to join the team.
- 5- We (mustn't) cover our mouth when we cough.
- 6- If you get hurt, you have to (told) the teacher.

6 Punctuate the following.

She mustn't eat too much candy

.....

what must students do at school

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"First aid kit"

(nurse's room - cuts - stay safe)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A) Healing Hands, Caring Hearts

أيادي شافية وقلوب مُحبة

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

hospital	مستشفى	receptionist	موظف استقبال
hope	أمل	children's hospital	مستشفى اطفال
famous	مشهور	treatment plan	خطه العلاج
treatment	علاج	playroom	حجرة الألعاب
tests	اختبارات / فحوصات	library	مكتبة
Cairo	القاهرة	fun place	مكان للمرح
the world	العالم	studies	دراسات
important	هام	teamwork	عمل جماعي
free	مجاني	strong	قوي
money	نقود	healthy	صحي
donations	تبرعات	adult	بالغ
person	شخص	comfortable	مريح
care	عناية	hopeful	مفعم بالأمل

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
donate	يتبرع	donated		explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained	
care	يعتني	cared		continue	يستمر	continued	
hope	يأمل	hoped		describe	يصف	described	
arrive	يصل	arrived		show	يعرض / يظهر	showed	

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
pay	يدفع	paid		get	يحصل على	got	

Expressions and prepositions

التعابير وحروف الجر

(be) known	معروف	(be) located	تقع
get better	يتحسن	become strong	يصبح قوي
for free	مجاناً / بدون مقابل	at low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة
full of	ملئمة بـ	check in	يسجل الدخول / ينهي الإجراءات

Words and its definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

Receptionist

a person who helps children check in when they arrive at the hospital.

موظف الاستقبال: الشخص الذي يساعد الأطفال في إنهاء الإجراءات عندما يصلوا إلى المستشفى.

Playroom

a place where children can have fun.

حجرة الألعاب: مكان يستطيع الأطفال الاستمتاع فيه.

Donate

giving money to help.

يتبرع: إعطاء المال للمساعدة.

Doctor

a person who explains the treatment plan to the children.

الطبيب: الشخص الذي يشرح خطة العلاج للأطفال.

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The friendly receptionist helped the patient when he arrived.
a) play b) read c) check in d) sleep
- My father a lot of money to hospitals.
a) takes b) donates c) picks d) steals
- The clever doctor explained the plan for the patient.
a) libraries b) toys c) treatment d) food
- The is where children can have fun.
a) schools b) playroom c) clinic d) receptionist



Main Points

- Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo.
- مستشفى 57357 هي مستشفى أطفال مشهورة في القاهرة.
- All treatment is free for the children who are sick.
- كل العلاج مجاني للأطفال المرضى.
- Families do not have to pay because many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital.
- العائلات ليست مضطرة للدفع لأن كثير من الناس في مصر يتبرعوا بالمال إلى المستشفى.
- When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them check-in.
- عندما يصل الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف استقبال ودود في إنهاء الإجراءات.
- Then, a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests.
- ثم تأخذهم ممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص من أجل الفحوصات.
- After the test, the doctor explains the treatment plan.
- بعد الفحوصات يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج.
- The hospital has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places, so children can feel happy and safe.
- المستشفى بها غرف ألعاب ومكتبات وأماكن أخرى ممتعة لكي يشعر الأطفال بالسعادة والأمان.
- The hospital is full of hope and helps every child become strong and healthy again.
- المستشفى مليئة بالأمل وتساعد كل طفل أن يصبح قوي وصحي مرة أخرى.

Reading : Hospital 57-3-57: A Place of Hope

المستشفى 57-3-57: مكان الأمل

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. It is known not only in Egypt but also around the world. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. The most important thing is that all treatment is free for the children.



Families do not have to pay because many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital. These donations help children get the care they need and give their families hope.

مستشفى ٥٧-٣-٥٧ هي مستشفى مشهورة للأطفال في القاهرة. مصر. وهي معروفة ليس فقط في مصر ولكن أيضًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. المستشفى كبير جدًا وتساعد الأطفال المرضى. الشيء الأكثر أهمية هو أن كل العلاج مجاني للأطفال. لا تضطر العائلات أن تدفع لأن العديد من الأشخاص في مصر يتبرعون بالمال للمستشفى. تساعد هذه التبرعات الأطفال في الحصول على الرعاية التي يحتاجونها وتمنح عائلاتهم الأمل.

When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them check-in. Then a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests. After the tests, the doctor explains the treatment plan. The hospital also has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe. Teachers help children continue their studies while they are getting better.

Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope. It shows that donations and teamwork help every child become strong and healthy again.

عند وصول الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف الاستقبال الودود في تسجيل الدخول. ثم تأخذهم الممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص لإجراء الفحوصات. بعد الفحوصات، يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج. تحتوي المستشفى أيضًا على غرف ألعاب ومكتبات وأماكن ترفيهية أخرى حتى يشعر الأطفال بالسعادة والأمان. يساعد المعلمون الأطفال على مواصلة دراستهم أثناء تحسين حالتهم. المستشفى ٥٧-٣-٥٧ مليئة بالأمل. وتظهر أن التبرعات والعمل الجماعي يساعد كل طفل على أن يصبح قويًا وصحيًا مرة أخرى.

Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

1. Hospital 57-3-57 is only for adults. ()
2. Doctors and nurses work together to help children. ()
3. Families must pay a lot of money to get treatment. ()
4. The hospital has playrooms and libraries for children. ()
5. Many people in Egypt donate money to help the hospital. ()

B) Word Building Skills

Suffix **-able / -ible**

The suffix **"-able / -ible"** is added to the end of a word to form an adjective.

اللاحقة هي إضافة لنهاية الكلمة لتحويلها إلى صفة.

break	يكسر	→	breakable	قابل للكسر
comfort	راحة	→	comfortable	مريح
cure	علاج	→	curable	قابل للعلاج
read	يقرأ	→	readable	يمكن قراءته
wash	يغسل	→	washable	قابل للغسيل
access	إمكانية الوصول	→	accessible	سهل الوصول
reverse	انعكاس	→	reversible	قابل للانعكاس
vision	رؤية	→	visible	مرئي
terrible	فظيع / سيء جداً	→	possible	ممكن

5.B 1 Complete the words using **-able or -ible**. أكمل الكلمات الآتية بلاحقة.

1. comfort →	2. cure →
3. read →	4. wash →
5. access →	6. vision →

5.B 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(comfortable - readable - terrible - breakable - possible)

1. My new phone is not It's super strong.
2. The teacher's handwriting is
3. It's to finish your homework before dinner if you start now.
4. The seat is so soft and
5. I didn't like the movie, it was

Pronunciation tips:

- Stress is usually on the first syllable of the base word.

- التشديد عادة يكون على المقطع الأول من الكلمة الرئيسية.

EX: COM-fort-able

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

1. The school organized a trip to Alexandria. ()
2. They visited Hospital 97-6-97. ()
3. The hospital isn't clean. ()
4. The doctors and nurses are kind and friendly. ()
5. Families pay a lot of money for treatment. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- No one needs to pay money. It's for everyone.
a) expensive b) cheap c) free d) high
- 2- The is the person who helps patients to check-in.
a) teacher b) engineer c) farmer d) receptionist
- 3- Many people money to help the hospital.
a) drink b) donate c) delete d) take
- 4- I went to the room for tests.
a) examination b) play c) fun d) playground
- 5- We have to for the ticket. It's not free.
a) pay b) paid c) paying d) pays
- 6- You must children who are sick.
a) help b) helped c) helping d) helps

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(playroom - schools - hospitals - famous - donated)

My family and I visited many (1)..... that help sick people for free. One of these hospitals is 57-3-57. It's a (2)..... children's hospital in Egypt and around the world. Doctors and nurses work hard to help patients. My father (3)..... money to help. I helped the children play in the (4)..... It's a safe and caring place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My friend Omar is sick. We always help him at school. He goes to Hospital 57-3-57 for children to have his treatment for free. He tells us about the hospital. It's very clean, and the doctors are very kind and helpful. The receptionists are friendly and help children check-in. The nurses take him to the examination room for tests. The doctors and nurses help him receive treatment. He takes his medicine and never feels sad. He is brave and hopeful.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to
 a) doctor b) nurse c) Omar d) receptionist
- 2- Hospital 57-3-57 helps children for
 a) hopeful b) free c) money d) adult

B Answer the following.

3- What is the text about?

.....

4- Where does Omar go for tests?

.....

5- What do you think of 57-3-57?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- The doctor (explain) the treatment plan.
- 2- We (must) speak loudly at the hospital.
- 3- You (have) to pay. It's free.
- 4- I must (following) the school rules.
- 5- The hospital (have) playrooms and libraries.
- 6- The donations (helps) the children get the care they need.
- 7- You can (donates) money online.

Unit 2

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- strong - The - hospital - children - helps - become .

2- examination - the patients - to - Nurses - room - the - take .

3- to - have - pay - do - not - Families .

4- is - free - All - for - children - treatment - the .

5- the hospital - does - give - hope - children - to - How ?

7 Punctuate the following.

cairo is the capital of Egypt

How can i donate money to help

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Hospital 57-3-57"

(children - donate - patients)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

a sick day	يوم مرضي	stickers	ملصقات
a sick leave	إجازة مرضية	patterns	أنماط
email	إيميل / رسالة بريد إلكتروني	bright	لامع
Wednesday	يوم الأربعاء	aloud	بصوت عالي
October	شهر أكتوبر	tips	نصائح
understanding	فهم	seat	مقعد
bathroom	حمام	soft	ناعم
junk food	وجبات سريعة	brain	مخ
dinner	وجبة العشاء	fine	رائع
bookmark	إشارة مرجعية / فاصل كتاب	movie	فيلم
enough	كافٍ		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
receive	يستلم	received		work	يعمل	worked	
return	يعود	returned		exercise	يتدرب	exercised	
wash	يغسل	washed					

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
send	يرسل	sent		come	يأتي	came	
let	يسمح / يدع	let		eat	يأكل	ate	

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

for two days	لمدة يومين	be away	يكون غائباً
thank you for	شكراً لك على	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
feels great	يشعر بشعور رائع / بالراحة	at least	على الأقل
won't be able to + inf			لن يتمكن من

Reading : A Sick Day: Business Email

إجازة مرضية: بريد إلكتروني للشركات

New Message

1. From : Karim
To : Ramy
Subject : Sick Leave for Two Days

2. Dear Mr. Ramy, عزيزي السيد رامي,
3. I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today. I have a fever and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home. أكتب إليك لأخبرك أنني لا أشعر بحالة جيدة اليوم. لدي حمى والتهاب في الحلق، لذا أحتاج إلى الراحة في المنزل.
4. I will not be able to come to work for two days. I hope to feel better and return on Wednesday, October 15th. لن أتمكن من الحضور إلى العمل لمدة يومين. أتمنى أن أشعر بالتحسن وأعود يوم الأربعاء 15 أكتوبر.
5. Thank you for your understanding. شكرا لفهمك.
6. Best regards, أطيب التحيات,
Karim Hassan كريم حسن

Writing a sick leave Email

1. **From :** The person who is sending the email. الشخص الذي يرسل البريد الإلكتروني.
To : The person who is receiving the email. الشخص الذي يستلم البريد الإلكتروني.
Subject : The subject line tells what the email is about. يوضح موضوع البريد الإلكتروني.
2. **Greeting:** we start with "Dear" + the person's name. التحية: نبدأ بـ "عزيزي/عزيزتي" + اسم الشخص.
3. **Reason for writing** and short explanation سبب الرسالة وتوضيح قصير.
4. **Explain** how long the leave will be and when you'll come back. وضح كم مدة الإجازة ومتى ستعود.
5. **A polite closing** sentence جملة ختامية مهذبة.
6. **A formal closing** (your full name at the end). خاتمة رسمية (اسمك الكامل في النهاية).

S.B 1. Read Karim's email carefully. Write (T) true or (F) false.

1. Karim had a stomachache and a headache. ()
2. The subject of the email is "Sick Leave for Two Days." ()
3. Karim will be away from work for two days. ()
4. The email is from Karim to Ramy. ()
5. Karim says that he feels great and wants to go to work. ()

S.B 2. Practice writing a formal email. You have a fever, and you want to send a sick leave request to your school. Write an email of about (30-40) words to your teacher.

New Message
— ↗ ×

From : _____

To : _____

Subject : _____

Dear, _____

I am writing to let you know _____

(Reason for writing and short explanation)

(Explain how long, when, or what will happen next)

(A polite closing sentence), _____

(A formal closing: your full name at the end)

Healthy Habits



1. Wash your hands

Always wash your hands before eating and after using the bathroom to stay clean and healthy.

اغسل يديك دائماً قبل الأكل وبعد استخدام المرحاض للحفاظ على نظافتك وصحتك.



2. Eat Healthy Food

Eat fruits, vegetables, and drink plenty of water to help your body grow strong.

تناول الفواكه والخضراوات. واشرب الكثير من الماء لمساعدة جسمك على النمو بشكل قوي.



3. Get Enough Sleep

Sleep at least 8-10 hours every night so your body and brain can rest.

نم لمدة ٨ - ١٠ ساعات على الأقل كل ليلة حتى يتمكن جسمك وعقلك من الراحة.



4. Exercise Every Day

Play, exercise, and run every day to keep your body strong.

العب وتدرّب واجري كل يوم للحفاظ على جسمك قوي.

Steps

الخطوات

1. Take a strip of paper in the shape of a bookmark.

١. أحضِر شريطاً من الورق على شكل علامة كتاب.

2. Front Side:

٢. الوجه الأمامي:

Write a title for your bookmark, like "Healthy Habits" or "Stay Strong!"

اكتب عنواناً لعلامة الكتاب، مثل: (عادات صحية) أو (ابق قوياً!)

• Draw something related to health, like fruits, water, soap, or a fit person.

ارسم شيئاً متعلقاً بالصحة، مثل الفواكه، أو الماء، أو الصابون، أو شخصاً يتمتع باللياقة.

3. Back Side:

٣. الوجه الخلفي:

• Write 2-4 short health tips

• Example:

اكتب ٢ إلى ٤ نصائح صحية قصيرة.

Wash your hands - Eat vegetables - Drink water every day - Don't eat too much junk food

اغسل يديك - اكل الخضراوات - اشرب الماء كل يوم - لا تأكل الكثير من الوجبات السريعة

4. Decorate:

٤. الزخرفة:

• Add colors, stickers, or patterns to make your bookmark bright and fun.

أضف الألوان أو الملصقات أو النقوش حتى تجعل علامة الكتاب مبهجة وممتعة.

5. Share:

٥. المشاركة:

• Show your bookmark to the class and read your health tips aloud

أعرض علامة الكتاب على زملائك في الصف واقرأ نصائحك الصحية بصوت عالٍ.

Exercises

Lessons 4,5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

1. Amr sent an email last Monday. ()
2. Amr has a sore throat. ()
3. He took three days to rest at home. ()
4. Amr went to work on Tuesday. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My mother had a leave last week. She had a fever.
a) happy b) ordinary c) sick d) good
- 2- You must drink warm when you have a sore throat.
a) oil b) liquids c) cold d) fever
- 3- You to brush your teeth every day to stay healthy.
a) must b) have c) has d) mustn't
- 4- My friend cover his mouth when he coughs.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have d) must
- 5- They must their hands before meals.
a) wash b) washes c) washed d) washing
- 6- My friend a doctor. He has a fever.
a) see b) seeing c) to see d) sees
- 7- You mustn't up late when you're sick.
a) come b) stay c) send d) receive

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

New Message — [x] [x]

From : Sandy
To : Merna
Subject : Sick Leave

Dear Merna,

I'm writing to let you know that I'm not feeling well today. I have a cough, so I need to rest at home. I won't be able to come to work for five days. I'll return on Sunday, July 26th. Thank you for your understanding.

Best regards,
Sandy

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Sandy will take a

- a) project b) sick leave c) holiday d) weekend

2- Sandy won't go to work for days.

- a) 2 b) 5 c) 3 d) 7

B Answer the following.

3- What is the email about?

4- When will Sandy return to work?

5- Who does Sandy write the email to?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- on - I - work - May 24th - return - will - to .

2- brush - You - teeth - have - healthy - to - your - be - to .

3- his - an email - friend - sending - to - is - Ahmed .

4- today - well - not - I - feeling - am .

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- The bed is very (comfort).

2- You have (studying) hard for exams.

3- You (must) drink cold water. You have a sore throat.

4- You must (are) quiet in hospitals.

6 Punctuate the following.

i am very sick today

.....

how are you feeling, ahmed?

.....

7 Write an email of about (40) words to your teacher. You have a toothache, and you want a sick leave request. Your name is Retal. Your teacher's name is Mr. Ahmed.

New Message
—  ×

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Important Vocabulary

headache	صداع	pharmacy	صيدلية
cough	كحة / سعال	medicine	دواء
sore throat	إلتهاب الحلق	serious	خطير
fever	حمى	toothache	ألم بالأسنان
clinic	عيادة	hospital	مستشفى
nurse	ممرضة	treatment plan	خطة العلاج
examination room	حجرة الفحص	hope	أمل
bandage	ضمادة	receptionist	موظف استقبال
plaster	لاصق جروح	donations	تبرعات
careful	حريص	playroom	حجرة الألعاب
cuts	جروح	teamwork	عمل جماعي
bruises	كدمات	comfortable	مريح
ready	جاهز	curable	قابل للعلاج
injured	مصاب	accessible	سهل الوصول
permission	إذن	bookmark	فاصل كتاب / إشارة مرجعية
a sick day leave	إجازة مرضية	junk food	وجبات سريعة
stomachache	ألم بالمعدة	stickers	ملصقات
tips	نصائح	first aid kit	حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية

Important verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
receive	يستلم	received		donate	يتبرع	donated	
return	يعود	returned		care	يعتني	cared	
exercise	يتدرب	exercised		explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained	
protect	يحمي	protected		check in	يسجل الدخول	checked in	
ignore	يتجاهل	ignored		call	يتصل	called	
rest	يرتاح	rested		visit	يزور	visited	

Irregular verbs

hurt	يؤلم / يؤذي	hurt	drink	يشرب	drank
have / has	يملك / عنده	had	take	يأخذ	took
give	يعطي	gave	bring	يجلب / يحضر	brought
pay	يدفع	paid	write	يكتب	wrote

send
let

يرسل
يسمح / يدع

sent
let

eat
come

يأكل
يأتي
ate
came

Important Paragraphs

At a clinic

I had a headache and a cough yesterday. I went to a clinic to see a doctor. The doctor examined me in the examination room. I went to the pharmacy to get my medicine. It wasn't serious. I must rest and drink warm liquids. I hope I feel better quickly.

First aid kit

At our school, there is a big first aid kit in the nurse's room. Students must tell the teacher if someone is injured. The nurse must make sure the kit is always clean, ready, and full. The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe. We must be careful and play safely so we don't get hurt.

Hospital 57-3-57

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo. All treatment is free for the children who are sick. Families do not have to pay because many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital. When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them check-in. Then, a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests. After the tests, the doctor explains the treatment plan. The hospital has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe.

A sick leave request

Dear Merna,
I'm writing to let you know that I'm not feeling well today. I have a cough, so I need to rest at home. I won't be able to come to work for two days. I hope to feel better quickly and return on Sunday, July 26th. Thank you for understanding.
Best regards,
Sandy

Important language

Modal verbs

- عند القواعد الهامة جداً نستخدم:

sub + must + inf

Ex: - Students **must** wash their hands before lunch.

- عند التعبير عن شيء غير مسموح به:

sub + mustn't + inf

Ex: - Children **mustn't** eat too much candy.

- عند الأشياء الضرورية نستخدم:

sub + have to + inf

Ex: - You **have to** wear the school uniform.

- إذا كان الشيء غير ضروري نستخدم:

sub + don't have to + inf

Ex: - Students **don't have to** get up early on Fridays.

Top students

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- I a sore throat.

- a) has b) have c) has to d) have to

2- Students eat healthy food.

- a) has b) have c) must d) mustn't

3- If you feel fine today, you go to the doctor.

- a) has to b) have to c) don't have to d) have

4- You stay up late when you're sick.

- a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have d) mustn't

5- Students tell a teacher or the nurse if someone is injured.

- a) has to b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

General Test on unit 2

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Berry's mother is a doctor. ()
- 2- Her mother works at Hospital 57-3-57. ()
- 3- All treatment is free. ()
- 4- The doctors explain the treatment plan for families. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- You need warm liquids because you have a
a) headache b) cough c) sore throat d) fever
- 2- The nurse helped me in the room for tests.
a) changing b) art c) dining d) examination
- 3- You to sleep early. It's a holiday.
a) must b) mustn't c) have d) don't have
- 4- You must to the doctor. You are very sick.
a) go b) going c) goes d) went

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(examined - doctor - rest - nurse - run)

Yesterday, my father was very sick, so we went to the (1).....
First, we went to the examination room for tests. The (2).....
helped us. Then, the doctor (3)..... my father and helped
him. He gave him medicine. The doctor asked him to (4)..... for
three days and drink warm liquids.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cancer is a dangerous illness. When the children get sick, they go to 57-3-57 hospital. It's for children. This hospital is very clean and helps patients very well. There are playrooms and libraries. At libraries, children can read books. They can also play and have fun in the playrooms. Doctors and nurses are very kind and helpful. Doctors explain the treatment plan for the children. Many people donate money to the hospital. So families don't have to pay.

Unit 2

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "patient" means
a) happy b) sad c) good d) sick
- 2- 57-3-57 is a hospital for
a) fever b) children c) doctor d) nurses

B Answer the following.

- 3- How can doctors help patients?
.....
- 4- What can children do in playrooms?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- They (must) to wear the school uniform at school.
- 2- You mustn't (to eat) unhealthy food.

6 Reorder the words to make a sentence.

- 1- must - the kit - Nurses - make sure - clean - is .
.....
- 2- father - rest - take - and - My - medicine - must .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

My friend ahmed is a doctor
.....
can i open the first aid kit
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Doctors" (sick - hospital - medicine)

.....
.....
.....
.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Nurses work in
a) homes b) hospitals c) shops d) offices
- 2- The kit has and plasters.
a) permission b) clothes c) books d) bandages
- 3- They take of patients.
a) care b) pictures c) candy d) cough

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. (nurse - doctor - Why - patients)

Berry : What do you want to be?

Asser : I want to be a (1).....

Berry : (2)..... ?

Asser : Because I like helping the (3)..... and giving them medicine. How about you?

Berry : I want to be a (4)..... I like to examine patients.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My father money to Hospital 57-3-57.
a) had b) donated c) took d) read
- 2- I went to the room for testes. The nurse was kind.
a) house b) class c) examination d) art
- 3- You have medicine.
a) take b) takes c) to take d) taking
- 4- We follow our school rules.
a) have b) has c) must d) mustn't

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1- You isn't have to go to the doctor. You aren't sick. (.....)
- 2- You having to listen to your teacher. (.....)

3- We must eat too many sweets.

(.....)

4- You must studying for exams.

(.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Mohammed. I have one brother. He is called Yaseen. I want to be a doctor to help patients and give them medicine. My brother wants to be a footballer. He likes football very much. He likes Mohammed Salah. He wants to be a player for the Egyptian team. He wants to be very famous.

A Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

1- Mohammed has two brothers.

()

2- Mohammed wants to be a doctor.

()

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3- Yaseen wants to be a

a) doctor

b) nurse

c) footballer

d) teacher

4- Yaseen wants to play in the Egyptian

a) school

b) team

c) medicine

d) hospital

5- Mohammed wants to be a doctor to help

a) footballers

b) doctors

c) patients

d) nurses

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Hospitals"

(doctors - patient - nurse - medicine)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Suitcase Stories

حكايات الحقبة

Unit three



Objectives

Vocabulary :

- suitcase, pack, travel, crowded, citadel, beach, ticket, abroad, tombs ancient, Nile cruise, sandcastles, temples
- campsite, warm, campfire, hike, trail

Language in Use :

- Planned Future "going to"

Life Skills :

- Planning - Communication

Core Value :

- Respect- Appreciation

Integrated Learning Activities :

- Design a travel adventure book

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

suitcase	حقيرة سفر	beach	شاطئ
pack	يحزم / يجهز الحقيرة	ticket	تذكرة
travel	يسافر	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
crowded	مزدحم	Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

swimming suit	بدلة سباحة	empty	فارغ
bus station	محطة اتوبيس	notebook	كراسة
the Pyramids	الأهرامات	cheap	رخيص
sunscreen	كريم واقي الشمس	museum	متحف
clothes	ملابس	sandy	رملي
toothbrush	فرشة أسنان	sea	بحر
vacation	إجازة / عطلة	excited	متحمس
except	ماعدا	camera	كاميرا
double-check	يتحقق مرتين / يراجع ثانية	winter	الشتاء
trip	رحلة	boots	حذاء ذوقية
summer	الصيف	large	كبير
bag	حقيرة	tonight	الليلة
service	خدمة	sandcastle	قلعة رملية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
prove	يثبت / يبرهن	proved		plan	يخطط	planned	
enter	يدخل	entered		pass	يمر	passed	

Irregular verbs

put	يضع	put	build	يبني	built
-----	-----	-----	-------	------	-------

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

By the way

بالمناسبة good idea

فكرة جيدة

Me too!

و أنا أيضاً! See you!

أراك لاحقاً!

Words and their definitions

الكلمات وتعريفها

suitcase : a large bag for clothes when traveling

حقيرة سفر : حقيرة كبيرة للملابس عند السفر

pack : to put things in a bag before a trip

يحزم : أن يضع أشياء في حقيرة قبل رحلة

travel : to go to another place

يسافر : أن يذهب لمكان آخر

crowded : full of many people

مزدحم : مليء بالكثير من الناس

beach : a sandy place near the sea

شاطيء : مكان رملي بجوار البحر

ticket : something that proves you can enter a place or get a service

تذكرة : شيء ما يثبت أنك تستطيع دخول مكان أو الحصول على خدمة.

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- I packed my before going to Aswan.

- a) bike b) suitcase c) bed d) room

2- The bus was very, so we waited for the next bus.

- a) empty b) crowded c) clean d) fast

3- A is a sandy place near the sea.

- a) ticket b) suitcase c) beach d) station

- 4 - I went to Alexandria and visited Qaitbay
- a) Library b) School c) Bridge d) Citadel
- 5 - A ticket is something that you can enter a place.
- a) plans b) proves c) pass d) builds
- 6 - I will double- my suitcase before sleeping.
- a) check b) play c) throw d) help
- 7 - I packed everything my sunscreen.
- a) excited b) except c) empty d) cheap



Main Points

- Sara and Sohaila are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow.
- سارة و سهيلة سيسافران إلى الإسكندرية غداً.
- Sara is going to pack her summer clothes, her swimming suit, and her camera.
- سارة سوف تحزم ملابسها الصيفية و بدلة السباحة و كاميرتها.
- Sohaila packed her suitcase except her toothbrush.
- جهزت سهيلة حقيبة سفرها ما عدا فرشاة أسنانها.
- Sara's mother has all the tickets.
- والدة سارة لديها كل التذاكر.
- The bus is going to be crowded because many families are traveling in the summer vacation.
- سيكون الأتوبيس مزدحم لأن الكثير من العائلات تسافر في إجازة الصيف.
- Sohaila wants to see Qaitbay Citadel and Bibliotheca Alexandrina.
- سهيلة تريد أن ترى قلعة قايتباي و مكتبة الإسكندرية.
- Sohaila is excited to build sandcastles by the beach!
- سهيلة متحمسة أن تبني قلاع رملية على الشاطئ!

Reading: Last-Minute Packing

التجهيز للسفر في آخر لحظة

Listen, read, and role-play.

استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Sara : Sohaila, I'm so excited - we're finally going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow!

سارة : سهيلة، أنا متحمسة جداً - سنسافر أخيراً إلى الإسكندرية غداً!

Sohaila: I'm so excited too! Did you pack your suitcase?

سهيلة: أنا متحمسة جداً أيضاً! هل جهزت حقبتك؟

Sara : Not yet. I'm going to pack tonight. I need to put in my summer clothes, my swimming suit, and my camera. What about you?

سارة : ليس بعد. سأحزم أمتعتي الليلة. أحتاج إلى وضع ملابس الصيف، وبدلة السباحة، وكاميرتي. ماذا عنك؟

Sohaila: I already packed my suitcase yesterday! I put in everything except my toothbrush. By the way, do you have our bus tickets?

سهيلة : لقد جهزت حقبتي بالأمس! وضعت فيها كل شيء ما عدا فرشاة أسناني. بالمناسبة،

هل لديك تذاكر الأتوبيس الخاصة بنا؟

Sara : Yes, my mother has all the tickets. She told me the bus is going to be very crowded because it's the summer vacation and many families are traveling.

سارة : نعم، والدتي لديها جميع التذاكر. أخبرتي أن الأتوبيس سيكون مزدحم للغاية لأنها إجازة الصيف والعديد من العائلات تسافر.

Sohaila: That's okay. We can sing songs together to make the time pass quickly!

سهيلة : لا بأس. يمكننا أن نغني أغاني معاً لجعل الوقت يمر سريعاً!

Sara : Great idea! What are you most excited to see in Alexandria?

سارة : فكرة رائعة! ما أكثر شيء تتشوقين لرؤيته في الإسكندرية؟

Sohaila: I really want to see Qaitbay Citadel and the new library, Bibliotheca Alexandrina. And of course, I'm excited to build sandcastles by the beach!

سهيلة : أريد حقاً أن أرى قلعة قايتباي والمكتبة الجديدة، مكتبة الإسكندرية. وبالطبع، أنا متحمسة لبناء قلاع رملية على الشاطئ!

Unit 3

Sara : Me too! Don't forget to put sunscreen in your suitcase when you finish packing.

سارة : وأنا أيضاً! لا تنسي وضع كريم واقي الشمس في حقبتك عند الانتهاء من حزم الأمتعة.

Sohaila: I won't! I'm going to double-check my suitcase before sleeping.

سهيلة : لن أنسى! سأتحقق من حقبتي مرة أخرى قبل النوم.

Sara : Me too. I'll see you tomorrow at the bus station!

سارة : وأنا أيضاً. سأراك غداً في محطة الاتوبيس!

Sohaila: See you!

سهيلة : أراك لاحقاً!

1 Answer the following questions.

- 1- What does Sara pack in her suitcase?
.....
- 2- Why is the bus going to be crowded?
.....
- 3- What does Sohaila want to see in Alexandria?
.....

(S.B) 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(suitcase – pack – travel – crowded – tickets – beach)

Sara and Sohaila are going to (1)..... to Alexandria tomorrow. Sara is going to (2)..... her (3)..... tonight with summer clothes, and her swimming suit. Sara's mother has their bus (4)..... The bus will be (5)..... because it's the summer holiday. They will also visit the (6)..... and swim there.

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Ali is going to visit Alexandria next weekend. ()
- 2- Ali is going to take a jacket and a hat. ()
- 3- Ali is going to swim in the sea. ()
- 4- His father is going to pack the sunscreen. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Don't forget to your suitcase before sleeping.
a) leave b) pack c) packed d) bake
- 2- Ali was so because he is traveling to Alexandria.
a) excited b) exciting c) bored d) sad
- 3- The is a sandy place near the sea.
a) sea b) street c) train d) beach
- 4- I take my on the beach because it's sunny.
a) camera b) swimming suit c) sunscreen d) mobile

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.
(family - sandcastles - swim - travel - go)

I like traveling in summer vacations with my (1)..... Next summer, we are going to (2)..... to Hurghada. I'm going to (3)..... in the sea. My brother likes building (4)..... by the beach. We are so excited to travel to Hurghada. It is a great place to relax and have a good holiday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Alexandria is one of the biggest cities in Egypt. It's a famous city by the sea. It has a wonderful sea and many famous places to visit. You can enjoy every moment there. In the morning, you can go to the beach and swim in the sea. You can build a sandcastle on the beach. In the evening, you can visit Qaitbay Citadel. It is a wonderful castle by the sea. You can take many photos and have a nice time there. Alexandria is the most beautiful city in Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- You can build a sandcastle on the
a) beach b) lake c) sea d) mountain
- 2- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a) Alexandria b) Sea c) Qaitbay Citadel d) beach

B Answer the following questions.

3- What can you do in Alexandria?

4- When can you go to the beach?

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- Many families are (travel) to Alexandria.

2- I'll (seeing) you tomorrow.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- Ahmed - Did - suitcase - his - pack - yesterday ?

2- suitcase - to put - in your - Don't - sunscreen - forget .

3- clothes - in - to - summer - need - my - I - put .

7 Punctuate the following.

I'll go to cairo tomorrow

What will you visit in alexandria

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Alexandria"

(suitcase - beach - Bibliotheca Alexandrina)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

Egyptian temple	معبد مصري	boat	قارب
home country	الوطن	ancient	قديم
Egypt	مصر	king	ملك
abroad	بالخارج	tombs	مقابر
beautiful	جميل	pharaohs	فراعنة
light	خفيف	train	قطار
outfit	زي	great	عظيم
hat	قبعة	amazing	مدهش
weather	طقس	airport	مطار
adventure	مغامرة	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
heritage	تراث	chance	فرصة
cruise	رحلة نهريّة	wonderful	رائع
felucca	فلوكة (مركب)	powerful	قوي
language	لغة	childhood	طفولة
traditional	تقليدي	passport	جواز سفر
hotel	فندق	picture	صورة
island	جزيرة	heavy	ثقيل

Important Places

الأماكن المهمة

the Great Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة	Sphinx	أبو الهول
Temple of Karnak	معبد الكرنك	Nile River	نهر النيل

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
move	ينتقل	moved		happen	يحدث	happened	
explore	يستكشف	explored		wish	يتمنى	wished	

Irregular verbs

swim يسبح / يعموم swam spend يقضي spent

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

one-week vacation إجازة أسبوع get ready يستعد
open-air museum متحف مفتوح move back يعود

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

- 1- She always misses her country when she travels abroad.
a) house b) home c) bad d) room
- 2- We are going to spend one-week in Alexandria.
a) library b) temple c) vacation d) story
- 3- I my time reading in my room.
a) sleep b) eat c) spend d) watch
- 4- We heard stories about ancient and how they built the Great Pyramids.
a) teachers b) doctors c) pharaohs d) nurses
- 5- We are going to take a on the Nile.
a) felucca b) train c) bus d) car
- 6- My father is in the sea with my brother.
a) reading b) sleeping c) swimming d) eating
- 7- Many tourists like to see the Egyptian in Luxor.
a) cars b) temples c) sun d) phones
- 8- We went to Aswan on a beautiful Nile
a) cruise b) tree c) paper d) bag



Main Points

Lesson 2

- Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their home country. He wants to show his family the most beautiful places in Egypt.
- سوف يسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى وطنه. هو يريد أن يُري عائلته الأماكن الأكثر جمالاً في مصر.
- They packed light outfits, hats, and sunglasses for hot weather.
- جهزوا ملابس خفيفة وقبعات ونظارات شمسية للطقس الحار.
- They are going to see the Great Pyramids in Giza and the Sphinx.
- سوف يرون الأهرامات العظيمة في الجيزة وأبو الهول.
- Mr. Maged told them stories about ancient pharaohs who built the Pyramids.
- أخبرهم السيد ماجد بقصص عن الفراعنة القدماء الذين بنوا الأهرامات.
- They are going to take a train to Luxor to explore the amazing temples of Karank.
- سوف يستقلون القطار إلى الأقصر ليستكشفوا معابد الكرنك المدهشة.
- They are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile cruise.
- سيذهبون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية جميلة.
- They are going to spend the last two days of the trip in Alexandria.
- سوف يقضون آخر يومين من الرحلة في الإسكندرية.
- They are going to swim in the sea and build sandcastles on the beach.
- سوف يسبحون في البحر ويبنون قلاع رملية على الشاطئ.

Reading: A Special Trip Home

رحلة مميزة إلى الوطن

- Listen and read.

استمع و اقرأ.

Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their home country, Egypt! He is Egyptian, but he moved abroad many years ago. Now, he wants to show his family the most beautiful places in their one-week vacation.



الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى وطنهم الأم، مصر! هو مصري، لكنه انتقل للخارج منذ سنوات عديدة. والآن، يريد أن يُري عائلته أجمل الأماكن خلال عطلتهم التي تستغرق أسبوعاً واحداً.

First, they are getting ready with their suitcases, where they packed light outfits, hats and sunglasses for the hot weather. Their adventure starts in Cairo, they are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. They are very excited to see tombs of ancient Egyptian kings as their father told them stories about the ancient pharaohs who built them.

في البداية، يستعدون بحقائبهم، حيث وضعوا ملابس خفيفة وقبعات ونظارات شمسية للطقس الحار. تبدأ مغامرتهم في القاهرة، حيث سيزورون أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة وأبو الهول. إنهم متحمسون للغاية لرؤية مقابر ملوك مصر القديمة، حيث روى لهم والدهم قصصاً عن الفراعنة القدماء الذين بنوها.

Then, they are going to take a train south to Luxor. People often call it the "world's greatest open-air museum." There, they are going to explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor, and learn about powerful kings like Ramses II.

ثم سيستقلون قطاراً جنوباً إلى الأقصر، التي يُطلق الناس عليها غالباً اسم "أعظم متحف مفتوح في العالم". هناك، سيستكشفون معابد الكرنك المذهلة والأقصر، ويتعرفون على ملوك أقوياء مثل رمسيس الثاني.

They are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile cruise. They are going to take a boat called "felucca" and see the beautiful islands. Finally, they are going to spend the last two days of their trip in Alexandria. They are going to swim in the sea and build sandcastles on its famous beach. This trip is a wonderful chance for the family to know their country together.

سيذهبون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية رائعة. سيأخذون مركب تسمى "الفلوكة" ويشاهدون الجزر الجميلة. وأخيراً، سيقضون اليومين الأخيرين من رحلتهم في الإسكندرية. سوف يسبحون في البحر وينون قلاع رملية على شاطئها الشهير. تعد هذه الرحلة فرصة رائعة للعائلة للتعرف على بلدهم معاً.

Answer the following questions.

1- Why is this trip to Egypt very special for Mr. Maged's family?

.....

2- How is the family traveling from Luxor to Aswan?

.....

3- What is the family going to do in Alexandria?

.....

Language

Planned Future

المستقبل المخطط له

Usage

الاستخدام

* We use "going to" when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مخطط أن نفعها في المستقبل.

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow	غداً	next + (week - month - year...)	التالي
later	لاحقاً	in the future	في المستقبل
one day	يوماً ما	in a few (minutes - hours - days ...)	في خلال
soon	قريباً		



Affirmative

الجملة المثبتة

Subject فاعل

I

He, She, It, singular مفرد

We, They, You, plural جمع

+

Auxiliary

الفعل المساعد

am = 'm

+

is = 's

+

are = 're

+

going to + المصدر

Ex: - I am going to swim in the sea tomorrow.

- Sally is going to pack her suitcase later.

- We are going to visit the Pyramids next Friday.



Negative

النفي

Subject فاعل

I

He, She, It, singular مفرد

We, They, You, plural جمع

+

Auxiliary

الفعل المساعد

am not

+

is not = isn't

+

are not = aren't

+

going to + المصدر

Ex: - I'm not going to forget my book tomorrow.

- He isn't going to sleep soon.

- They aren't going to travel in the future.

Question

السؤال

Yes or No question

السؤال بهل

Auxiliary
الفعل المساعد

Am

Is

Are

+

Subject فاعل

I

he, she, it, singular مفرد

we, they, you, plural جمع

+

+ going to + المصدر ?

Ex: - Are you going to travel to Luxor?

- Yes, I'm.

- No, I'm not.

Wh-question

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Wh-word

What

Where

When

+

Auxiliary

am

is

are

+

+

+

Subject

I

he, she, it, مفرد

we, they, you, جمع

+

+ going to + المصدر ?

Ex: - What is she going to visit next year?

- She's going to visit the Sphinx.

Check your Language

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

(S.B) 1- I take my passport and ticket to the airport.

a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to

(S.B) 2- Nour pack her suitcase with clothes.

a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to

(S.B) 3- My friends stay in a hotel by the beach.

a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to

(S.B) 4- We wear our sunglasses at the beach.

a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to

(S.B) 5- Adam take pictures with his camera.

- a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to

6- They are going in the kitchen.

- a) help b) helps c) helping d) to help

7- We are to visit Luxor later.

- a) go b) goes c) going d) went

8- My sister is going be a doctor one day.

- a) in b) of c) to d) on

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1- He is going to (packing) his suitcase in a few minutes.

2- We are going (visits) ancient temples.

3- What (he is) going to do?

4- They are going to travel to Egypt (last) summer.

5- She (not going) to sleep early tomorrow.

6- Where are you (go) to travel next year?

7- She is going to read a book (yesterday).

8- The boys are going to (wore) sunglasses. It's sunny.

9- They (don't) going to study next week.

10- When (do) you going to visit us?

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- in - is - Kinda - going - a hotel - stay - to .

.....

2- wear - Is - to - sunglasses - going - she ?

.....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- He is Egyptian, but he abroad many years ago.
a) played b) moved c) slept d) read
- 2- Ancient built the Great Pyramids and the Sphinx.
a) teacher b) doctors c) tourists d) pharaohs
- 3- We will go to Aswan and take a nice Nile
a) trip b) cruise c) sea d) match
- 4- She is to visit Alexandria next summer.
a) go b) goes c) going d) went
- 5- They are going sandcastles on the beach.
a) build b) builds c) to build d) built
- 6- My mother going to cook lunch at 3:30.
a) does b) is c) are d) do

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(felucca – kings – Aswan – sea – temples)

Next winter, we are going to go to Luxor and (1)..... We will visit the amazing (2)..... of Karnak and Luxor and learn about powerful (3)..... like Ramses II. Then, we will go to Aswan on a beautiful cruise. We're going to take a (4)..... and see the beautiful islands.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

The world's greatest open-air museum is Luxor, a city in southern Egypt filled with ancient wonders. Luxor is famous for its amazing temples, tombs, and heritage that tell stories of powerful pharaohs. Visitors can explore the temples of Karnak, Luxor Temple, and the Valley of the Kings. You can also take a Nile cruise to enjoy every part of the city. The city shows how ancient Egyptians lived. Luxor is an important place because it helps us learn history and admire the ancient Egyptians' creativity.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- is the world's greatest open-air museum.
a) Aswan b) Cairo c) Alexandria d) Luxor
- 2- The underlined word "cruise" means a trip.
a) boat b) plane c) car d) walking

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is Luxor famous for?
.....
- 4- Why is Luxor an important place?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We (is) going to ride a camel.
- 2- My friend is (go) to play the next match.
- 3- I'm going (helps) my mother.
- 4- Ahmed is (going) watch TV later.
- 5- The girls are going to (wore) dresses at the party.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- They - the train - to - going - Aswan - take - are - to .
.....
- 2- Karnak - is - to visit - He - going - of - the amazing - temples .
.....
- 3- pharaohs - Their - about - father - stories - told - them .
.....

4- you - What - to - in - going - visit - are - Luxor ?

5- packed - They - and - outfits - hats - heavy .

6 Punctuate the following.

King ramses II is a powerful king

will you go to aswan by train

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the words below:

"A trip you enjoyed"

(Luxor - Nile felucca - temples)

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

night	ليلة	campsite	معسكر / مخيم
stars	نجوم	campfire	نار المخيم
warm	دافئ	hike	يتنزه
camping trip	رحلة تخييم	nature trail	درب / مسار طبيعي

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

Wadi El Gemal Park	منتزه وادي الجمال	torch	كشاف / مصباح يدوي
water bottle	زجاجة ماء	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
main purpose	الغرض الأساسي	fun	متعة
mountain	جبل	tent	خيمة
desert	صحراء	shopping	تسوق
lake	بحيرة	items	أشياء / عناصر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
clean	ينظف	cleaned		study	يدرس / يذاكر	studied	

Irregular verbs

leave	يترك / يغادر	left	keep	يحافظ	kept
-------	--------------	------	------	-------	------

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

go on the trip	يذهب في رحلة	look for	يبحث عن
set up our tents	ننصب / نركب خيامنا	sit around	يجلس حول
share happy moments			يشارك اللحظات السعيدة
in the evening			في المساء

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- We are going to visit Wadi El Gemal Park for
a) reading b) camping c) sleeping d) drinking
- 2- I forgot my water for the trip.
a) car b) hat c) bottle d) sunglasses
- 3- I packed my clothes for the trip. It's going to be very cold.
a) light b) warm c) old d) dirty
- 4- Our family is going to sit around the in the desert.
a) moments b) campfire c) kitchen d) temple
- 5- We're going to on a nature trail.
a) hike b) sleep c) study d) sleep
- 6- The nature is very beautiful, so we are going to enjoy our trip.
a) temple b) hospital c) school d) trail
- 7- We are going to set up our near some amazing mountains.
a) tents b) pens c) bottles d) clothes



Main Points

- I'm going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a camping trip next weekend.
- سوف اسافر إلى منتزه وادي الجمال لرحلة تخيم مدرسية في نهاية الأسبوع القادم.
- I am going to pack my warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle.
- سوف أجهز ملابس الدافئة وكشاف وزجاجة ماء.
- We are going to set up our tents near the mountains.
- سوف ننصب خيامنا بالقرب من الجبال.
- We are going to sit around a campfire in the desert and tell stories.
- سنجلس بالقرب من نار المعسكر في الصحراء ونروي قصص.
- We are going to hike on a nature trail and look for special birds.
- سوف نتنزه في مسار طبيعي ونبحث عن الطيور المميزة.
- We are going to clean the campsite carefully at the end.
- سوف ننظف المخيم بعناية في النهاية.

Reading: Our School Camping Trip

رحلة التخييم المدرسية

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. Our teacher told us those who want to go on the trip, they need to receive their bus tickets today. She said the campsite is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر فصلنا إلى منتزه وادي الجمال الجميل في رحلة تخييم مدرسية. سنعبأ حقائبنا بملابس دافئة، ومصباح يدوي، وزجاجة ماء. أخبرتنا معلمتنا أن من يريد الذهاب في الرحلة عليه استلام تذاكر الأتوبيس اليوم. وقالت إن المخيم سيكون مزدحماً لأن مدرسة أخرى ستزوره أيضاً.

When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals. In the evening, we are going to sit around a campfire and tell stories. I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family.

عند وصولنا، سننصب خيامنا قرب بعض الجبال المدهشة. ستعلمنا معلمتنا عن نباتات وحيوانات الصحراء. في المساء، سنجلس حول نار المخيم ونبادل القصص. سألتقط الكثير من الصور لأشارك هذه اللحظات السعيدة مع عائلتي.

The next morning, we are going to hike on a nature trail and look for special birds. Before we leave, we are going to clean the campsite carefully to keep it clean. This is going to be my first camping trip, and I think it is going to be so much fun!

في صباح اليوم التالي، سنقوم بالتنزه في مسار طبيعي بحثاً عن أنواع مميزة من الطيور. قبل المغادرة، سننظف موقع التخييم بعناية للحفاظ على نظافته. ستكون هذه أول رحلة تخييم لي، وأعتقد أنها ستكون ممتعة للغاية!

1- What is the main purpose of the class trip?

.....

2- What activities are they going to do in the evening?

.....

3- What are they going to do on the nature trail?

.....

B) Word Building Skills

Language

Adverb

الظرف

- هي كلمة تستخدم لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل وتأتي بعده.
- يتكون الظرف عادة عن طريق إضافة (**ly**) في نهاية الصفة.

adj

ly

adv

strong

قوي

strongly

بقوة

brave

شجاع

bravely

بشجاعة

slow

بطيء

slowly

ببطء

loud

عالي الصوت

loudly

بصوت عالي

careful

حذر

carefully

بحذر

quick

سريع

quickly

بسرعة

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (**y**) ويسبقه ساكن يحول حرف (**y**) إلى (**i**) ثم نضع **ly**.

Ex:

happy

سعيد

happily

بسعادة

Ex: - She sings happily.

- The baby cries loudly.

Tip

1- The ending (-ly) is usually pronounced / li /.

Check your Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1- I speak (quiet) at the library.

2- She climbed the mountain (brave).

3- She smiled (happy) when she won the race.

4- The boys sing the song (loud).

5- She crossed the road (careful).

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- children - funny - loudly - at - The - story - laughed - the .

2- She - into - quietly - library - walked - the .

3- solved - quickly - Fady - puzzle - smiled - and - the .

4- brother - My - football - with - happily - friends - his - plays .

5- artist - carefully - The - painted - picture - the .

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- His favorite hobby is camping ()
- 2- They set up the tents when they arrive. ()
- 3- His mother starts the campfire. ()
- 4- Spending the night under the stars is comfortable. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- We went to Wadi El Gemal Park for a school trip.
a) reading b) camping c) sleeping d) hunting
- 2- We set up our in the desert to sleep at night.
a) campfire b) tents c) clothes d) house
- 3- She is going to late for the trip.
a) is b) are c) be d) doing

4- I to enjoy the weather in Alexandria.

- a) going b) go c) am going d) goes

5- We are going to hike on a nature

- a) street b) desert c) trail d) train

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Retal. Next Sunday, my family is going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a camping trip. I'm so excited for this trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. The campsite is going to be crowded because there will be many people enjoying the weather. When we arrive, we will set up our tents. They are very important at night. We can sleep in them. The weather is going to be cool. We are going to hike on a nature trail to see some special birds.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to

- a) campsite b) tents c) birds d) Retal

2- They are going to see birds on a nature

- a) camp b) trail c) tree d) torch

B Answer the following questions.

3- What are they going to take with them for the trip?

.....

4- When will Retal and her family go for a campsite trip?

.....

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- You should cross the road (careful).
- 2- Don't speak (loud) in the library.
- 3- He is going to (are) late for work.
- 4- What (do) they going to draw?
- 5- She (doesn't) going to travel next week.
- 6- What (is) you going to pack?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- not - a hotel - am - in - going - I - to - sleep .
.....
- 2- to - around - going - sit - a campfire - We - are .
.....
- 3- tickets - receive - They - to - bus - need - their .
.....
- 4- you - Are - to - going - visit - next - year - Egypt ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

He is going to travel next friday

where are you going to go

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Camping trip"
(pack - campfire - tent)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

invitation	دعوة	best time	أفضل وقت
old	قديم	landmark	معلم بارز
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	sign	علامة / لافتة
koshari	كشري	friendly	ودود
delicious	لذيذ	statue	تمثال
vehicle	مركبة	cousins	أولاد العم
cheap	رخيص	quietly	بهدهوء
way	طريقة	highly	عالي
city	مدينة	hill	تل
injured man	رجل مصاب	soldier	جندي
test	إختبار	archaeologist	عالم آثار

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
invite	يدعو	invited		protect	يحمي	protected	
hope	يأمل	hoped		recommend	يوصي	recommended	
miss	يفقد	missed		discover	يكشف	discovered	
try	يحاول	tried		carry	يحمل	carried	
promise	يعد	promised		wait	ينتظر	waited	

Irregular verbs

let	يدع	let	fight	يحارب	fought
draw	يرسم	drew	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

show you around	نأخذك في جولة
do well	يؤدي جيدًا
look out the window	انظر من النافذة
I can't wait to see you.	لا أستطيع أن انتظر لأراك / متشوق لرؤيتك.
Let me know if you can come.	دعني اعرف لو كنت تستطيع أن تأتي.

How to write email invitation

Greeting : Start with Dear (name) and friendly opening.

التحيات : ابدأ بـ عزيزي + اسم و افتتاحية لطيفة

Invitation : Say "I want to invite you to"

الدعوة : أنا أريد أن ادعوك إلى

Describe places: Pick (2-3) landmarks and write (1-2) sentences about each

وصف المكان: اختار (٢-٣) معالم واكتب جملة أو جملتين على كل واحد

Closing: End with "Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!" and sign your name

الخاتمة: انهي "بـ من فضلك اخبرني إذا كنت تستطيع ان تأتي. أنا لا أستطيع الانتظار لأراك!" ثم وقع بإسمك.

دعوة بريد إلكتروني غير رسمية Informal email invitation

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

New Message

From : Ramy

To : Max

Subject : Invitation to visit Egypt

Dear Max,

عزيزي ماكس،

I hope you are doing well! I miss you so much. I want to invite you to visit Egypt this summer. It's an amazing country with lots of fun places to see!

أتمنى أن تكون بخيرا اشتقت إليك كثيرا. أود دعوتك لزيارة مصر هذا الصيف. إنها بلد رائعة مليئة بالأماكن الممتعة لرؤيتها!

You must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza-they're so big and old!

We can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful

Red Sea. Don't forget to try Egyptian food like koshari. It's delicious!

يجب عليك زيارة أهرامات الجيزة-إنها كبيرة وقديمة! كما يمكننا ركوب قارب في نهر النيل والاستمتاع بجمال البحر الأحمر. ولا تنس تجربة المأكولات المصرية مثل الكشري. إنه لذيذ!

My family and I will show you around. I promise you'll have the best time!

سنأخذك أنا وعائلتي في جولة. أعدك بأنك ستقضي أفضل الأوقات!

Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

أرجو إبلاغي إن كان بإمكانك الحضور. أنا متشوق لرؤيتك!

Your friend,

صديقك،

Ramy

رامي

5th PRIM. SECOND TERM

Exercises

ادع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1 - Ahmed sent the email invitation last Sunday. ()
- 2 - John lives in the USA. ()
- 3 - They are going to visit Alexandria. ()
- 4 - The pharaohs were very lazy. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 - I tried It's a delicious meal.
a) koshari b) campsite c) book d) bus
- 2 - Egypt is a great We are proud of it.
a) city b) town c) country d) sea
- 3 - He is to send an email invitation.
a) go b) goes c) going d) went
- 4 - We going to enjoy our trip next weekend.
a) don't b) are c) isn't d) doesn't

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 - My father (are) going to take us to Cairo.
- 2 - My friend drives his car (careful).
- 3 - We are going (sleeps) in a tent at night.
- 4 - My cousin (going / visit) the temple next week.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 - come - Please - if - you - me - let - know - can .
.....

- 2 - well - you - I - doing - are - hope .
.....

3- time - have - 'll - promise - nice - I - a - you .

4- the - Ahmed - puzzle - solved - quickly - smiled - and .

5 Punctuate the following

what are you going to do

buses are a cheap way to travel

6 Write an email of about (30-40) words to your friend John from France inviting him to visit Egypt. Your name is Adam.

New Message
— [icon] ×

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Important vocabulary

suitcase	حقبة سفر	adventure	مغامرة
crowded	مزدحم	heritage	تراث
beach	شاطئ	felucca	فلوكة
ticket	تذكرة	cruise	رحلة نيلية
Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي	tomb	مقبرة
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية	ancient	قديم
swimming suit	بدلة السباحة	pharaohs	فراعنة
the Pyramids	الأهرامات	chance	فرصة
vacation	إجازة	Sphinx	أبو الهول
except	ماعدا	night	ليل
double-check	التحقق مرة أخرى	campsite	معسكر
temple	معبد	campfire	نار المخيم
home country	الوطن	trail	مسار / درب
abroad	الخارج	torch	كشاف
outfit	زي	tent	خيمة
invitation	دعوة	mountain	جبل
friendly	ودود		

Important verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
prove	يبرهن / يثبت	proved		explore	يستكشف	explored	
plan	يخطط	planned		happen	يحدث	happened	
study	يذاكر	studied		invite	يدعو	invited	
miss	يفتقد	missed		promise	يوعد	promised	
discover	يكشف	discovered		wait	ينتظر	waited	

Irregular verbs

build	يبني	built	fight	يحارب	fought
swim	يسبح	swam	leave	يترك / يغادر	left

Important paragraphs**Packing for a trip**

We are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. I am going to pack my summer clothes, my swimming suit, and my camera. My sister will pack her hat and sunglasses. The bus is going to be crowded because it's the summer vacation and many families are traveling. We are going to visit Qaitbay Citadel and Bibliotheca Alexandrina. We are going to build sandcastles by the beach.

A special trip home

My uncle is going to come to Egypt for one-week vacation with his family. He moved abroad many years ago. He wants to show them the most beautiful places in Egypt. They are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. They are going to take a train to Luxor to explore the amazing temples of Karnak. From Luxor, they are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile cruise.

A camping trip

I'm going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a camping trip next weekend. I am going to pack my warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. We are going to set up our tents near the mountains. We are going to sit around a campfire in the desert and tell stories. We are going to hike on a nature trail and look for special birds. We are going to clean the campsite carefully at the end.

A trip to Luxor and Aswan

Next winter, we are going to go to Luxor and Aswan. We will visit the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor and learn about powerful kings like Ramses II. Then, we will go to Aswan on a beautiful cruise. We're going to take a felucca and see the beautiful islands.

Important language focus

Planned future

Affirmative

Sub + (am / is / are) + going to + inf.....

Ex: I am going to travel. She is going to sleep.

Negative

Sub + (am not / isn't / aren't) + going to + inf.....

Ex: - They aren't going to visit Aswan.

Question

Am / Is / Are + sub + going to + inf.....?

Wh-word + (am / is / are) + sub + going to + inf.....?

Ex: - Are you going to study?

- Yes, I am. - No, I'm not.

Ex: - What are they going to do?

- They are going to study.

- Find the mistakes and write the correct words.

- 1- She going to travel tomorrow. (.....)
- 2- They is going to pack their suitcases. (.....)
- 3- We are go to build a sandcastle. (.....)
- 4- He are going to have a ticket. (.....)
- 5- I am go to visit my cousins next week. (.....)

Adverb

- هي كلمة تستخدم لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل. ويتكون الظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

(S.B)- Fill in the blanks using words from the box.

(quietly - bravely - strongly - slowly - highly)

- 1- The injured man walked to the chair.
- 2- Please close the door so you don't wake the baby.
- 3- The soldier fights to protect his country.
- 4- I recommend that you study for the test.
- 5- The old car climbed the hill

General Test on unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- They took the train to Luxor last Sunday. ()
- 2- They spent three days in Luxor. ()
- 3- They visited the temples of Karnak. ()
- 4- They enjoyed the views of the Nile and the islands. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I packed my to travel with my uncle to Luxor.
a) book b) suitcase c) pencil case d) chair
- 2- We went to the desert and stayed at a at night.
a) hotel b) school c) campsite d) trail
- 3- My mother is going delicious food tomorrow.
a) cook b) cooks c) to cook d) cooking
- 4- My friends going to stay at home next weekend.
a) am b) is c) are d) do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(sandcastles - hot - pack - back - sunglasses)

I like traveling very much. The night before we travel, I (1) my suitcase. I like taking my (2) and light outfits because it is (3) in summer. Every summer, we go to Alexandria and Cairo. In Alexandria, we like to build (4) on the beach. We like to have fish in a restaurant. It's a nice city!

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are many places you can enjoy in Egypt. There are ancient sites and nature places you can visit. You can go to Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. You can also take a boat on the Nile and enjoy seeing fields along the Nile River. You can go to Alexandria and enjoy its sea and sandy beaches. You can visit Qaitbay Citadel and Bibliotheca Alexandrina and read books that match your interests. In the south, you can visit many historical places in Luxor and Aswan.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- You can see the Pyramids and the Sphinx in
 a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Luxor d) Giza
- 2- The underlined pronoun "its" refers to
 a) Nile b) beach c) Giza d) Alexandria

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- How can you enjoy the Nile?

- 4- What places can you visit in the south of Egypt?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- My sister (are) going to draw a picture.
- 2- We are (go) travel next Friday.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- in - see - What - you - Alexandria - do - to - want ?

- 2- to - going - We're - clean - carefully - campsite - the .

7 Punctuate the following.

what activities are you going to do

.....

I will visit luxor next Friday

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Egypt"

(Nile - beaches - weather)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test on unit 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Nour likes (نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)
- a) reading b) traveling c) drawing d) cooking
- 2- They go to Alexandria by
- a) bus b) train c) boat d) car
- 3- Her brother likes to build
- a) fishing b) sandcastles c) hospitals d) houses

2 Read and complete the dialog.

(hotel - are - Where - suitcase)

Ahmed : What (1)..... you doing, Ali?

Ali : I'm packing my (2).....

Ahmed : (3)..... are you going?

Ali : We are going to Alexandria.

Ahmed : Where will you stay?

Ali : We'll stay in a (4).....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The ancient Egyptians built many
- a) doors b) temples c) schools d) hospitals
- 2- I packed my light because it's hot.
- a) outfit b) bricks c) temple d) sunglasses
- 3- We going to double-check our suitcases.
- a) am b) is c) do d) are
- 4- The boy is to visit his uncle.
- a) went b) goes c) go d) going

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1- She is going goes to her grandmother. (.....)
- 2- What is you going to read? (.....)
- 3- We don't going to watch the match. (.....)
- 4- My sister is go to help our mother. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Luxor is one of the most beautiful cities in Egypt. It has many places to visit. We went there last summer. We visited the amazing temples of Karnak. We took sunglasses and light outfit because the weather is very hot in summer. We enjoyed our boat trip on the Nile to Aswan. We enjoyed watching the fields and the islands.

A Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Luxor is a beautiful city in Egypt. ()
- 2- They visited the Pyramids in Luxor. ()

B Choose the correct answer.

- 3- They visited Luxor and Aswan last
 a) winter b) summer c) week d) spring
- 4- They enjoyed their on the Nile.
 a) temples b) boat trip c) cars d) trains
- 5- You can go on a boat trip from Luxor to
 a) Aswan b) Cairo c) Tanta d) Egypt

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below: "Places in Egypt"

(Luxor - Cairo - Nile - Pyramids)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

encourage

يشجع

regularly

بانتظام

accordingly

بناء على ذلك

science fair

معرض العلوم

workshop

ورشة

audience

جمهور

General Test on units 1, 2, 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- Nour's favorite hobbies are drawing and painting. ()
- 2- Watching TV is better than reading. ()
- 3- She practices crafting on Fridays. ()
- 4- She makes shapes of animals. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Last summer, I enjoyed near the mountain.
a) cleaning b) running c) camping d) singing
- 2- We visited an citadel that was thousands of years old.
a) ancient b) exciting c) dangerous d) crowded
- 3- She to take medicine. She is very ill.
a) must b) have c) has d) had
- 4- We going to stay at home.
a) am b) must c) is d) are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(creative – play – skills – games – team)

Activities are very important to improve our (1) When we (2) the piano, we feel relax. When we play board (3), we learn teamwork and problem-solving. I help my brother to learn a new hobby because everyone should have a hobby to be (4) It also helps us in our daily lives.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last Monday. I felt very sick because I ate bad food. My stomach hurt me, so I went to the clinic to see a doctor. He was very kind. First, he examined me and knew the cause of the sickness. Then, he gave me medicine and asked me not to eat fast food from shops in streets. Finally, I went to the pharmacist to buy medicine. He told me how to use it safely. Today, I feel very well. We should respect the doctors because they help us live a healthier life.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- He was very sick last
a) Sunday b) Monday c) Today d) Friday
- 2- The underlined word "it" refers to
a) doctor b) clinic c) medicine d) pharmacists

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- How does he feel today?
.....
- 4- Where did he go first?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- relax - Playing - feel - me - piano - helps - the .

.....

2- Aswan - to - do - How - go - you ?

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- My brother (can) sing very well, so he is sad.

2- My sister must (taking) care of her dog.

7 Punctuate the following.

where does your brother live

.....

my favorite hobby is drawing pictures

.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

" Your favorite hobby "
(puzzles - problem - creativity)

.....

.....

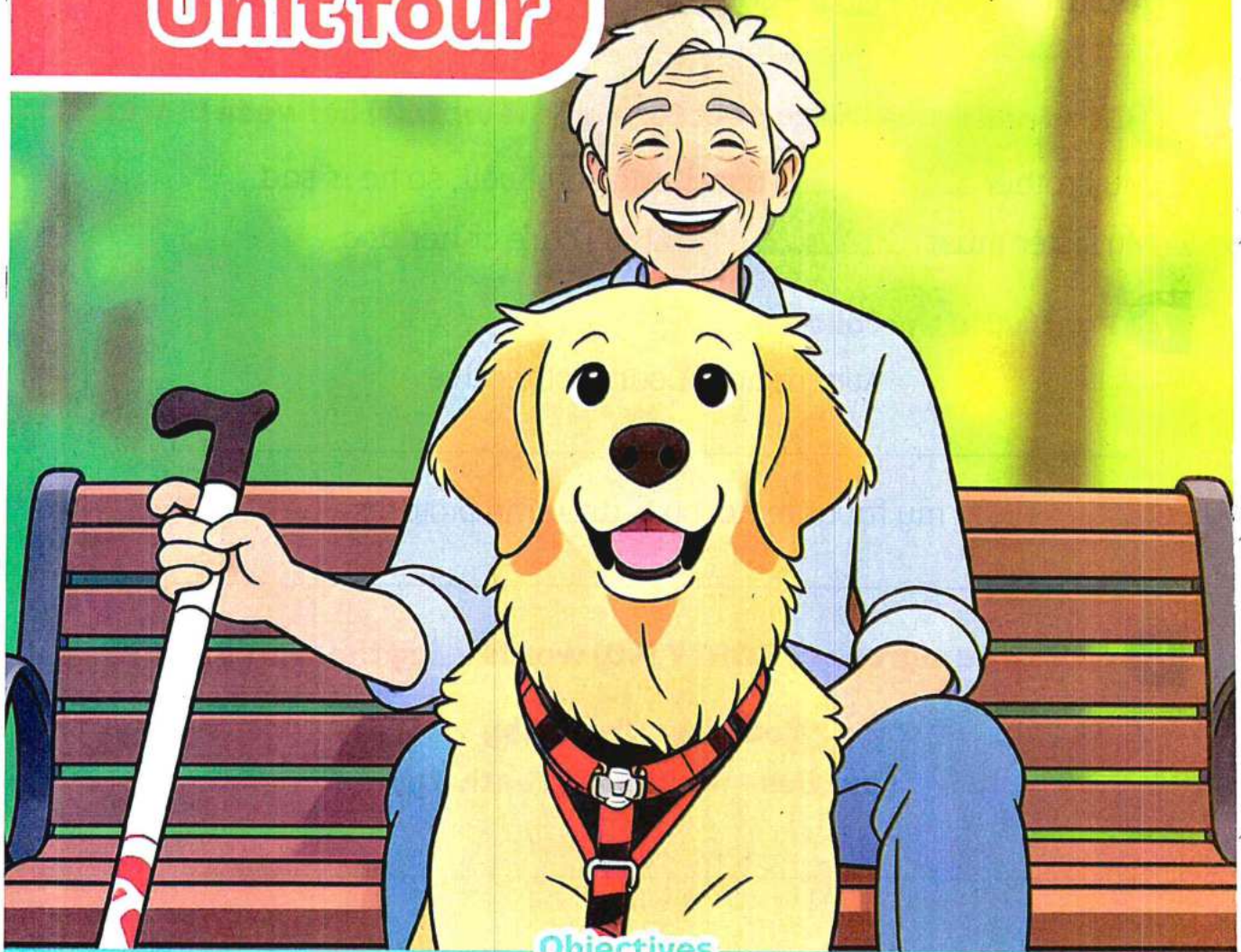
.....

.....

Jobs in The Animal Kingdom

وظائف في مملكة الحيوان

Unit four



Objectives

Vocabulary :

- police dog, guide dog, criminals, water buffalo, pigeon, falcon, gecko, scarab beetle, ploughs, crops, giants, loads, containers, ripe, routes, milking, sweater, grain, watching over, barn, carts, narrator, egrets, raids, beak, hoppers, bother, common sight, pest, elegant

Language in Use :

- Present Simple vs Present Continuous

Life Skills :

- Observation-Critical Thinking

Core Value :

- Respect for Nature – Responsibility

Integrated Learning Activities :

- Poster be kind to animal helpers

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

police dogs	كلاب بوليسية (لمساعدة الشرطة)	horses	خيول
guide dogs	كلاب إرشاد (لمساعدة المكفوفين)	rescue dolphins	دلافين إنقاذ

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

animals	حيوانات	rescue	إنقاذ	bark	نباح الكلاب / ينبع
job	وظيفة	blind people	المكفوفين	ability	قدرة / مقدرة
officers	ضباط	streets	شوارع	quality	صفة / ميزة
criminal	مجرم	countries	دول	nose	أنف

Adjectives

الصفات

real	حقيقي	lost	مفقود	fast	سريع
sleepy	نعسان	scared	خائف	sharp	حاد
angry	غاضب	nervous	متوتر	lazy	كسول
upset	حزين / مزعج	playful	مريح	shy	خجول

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
cross	يعبر	crossed		rescue	ينقذ	rescued	

Irregular verbs

find	يجد	found	شم	smell	يشم	smelt
feel	يشعر	felt	يمسك / يقبض على	catch	يمسك / يقبض على	caught

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

just like	تمامًا مثل	without getting hurt	دون أن تصاب / تتأذى
from far away	من بعيد	feel much better	يشعر بتحسن أكبر
in danger	في خطر	move around	يتجول
sense of smell	حاسة الشم	What kind of?	ما نوع...؟

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer.

- 1- (Blind - Scared) people can't see.
- 2- Police (horses - dogs) have strong noses.
- 3- Brave officers use the dogs to catch (criminals - dolphins).
- 4- When you are (upset - sharp), you can go for a walk.
- 5- (Guide - Nervous) dogs help blind people cross the street.
- 6- (Horses - Dolphins) live in the sea.



Main Points

- Some animals have real jobs, just like people do.
بعض الحيوانات لها وظائف حقيقية تماماً مثل ما يفعل البشر.
- Police dogs are brave, smart animals that help officers find lost people and catch criminals using their strong sense of smell.
الكلاب البوليسية هي حيوانات شجاعة وذكية تساعد الضباط أن تجد الأشخاص المفقودة وأن تمسك المجرمين باستخدام حاسة الشم القوية لديها.
- Guide dogs are calm, careful animals that help blind people walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt.
كلاب الإرشاد هي حيوانات هادئة وحريصة تساعد المكفوفين أن يمشوا بأمان ويعبروا الشوارع ويتجولوا دون أن يصابوا بالأذى.
- Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better.
الخيول تساعد الناس أن يشعروا بالهدوء والسعادة. قضاء وقت معهم يمكن أن يجعل الشخص الحزين أو الخائف يشعر بتحسن أكثر.
- Rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea.
دلافين الإنقاذ تساعد الناس الذين يكونون في خطر في البحر.
- These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.
هذه الحيوانات ترينا أن مساعدة الآخرين وظيفة مميزة جداً.



police dogs



horses



rescue dolphins



guide dogs

Teacher: Did you know that some animals have real jobs, just like people do?

المعلم : هل تعلم أن بعض الحيوانات لديها وظائف حقيقية. تماماً كما يفعل البشر؟

Student: Really? What kind of jobs do they do?

الطالب : حقاً؟ ما نوع الوظائف التي يقومون بها؟

Teacher: Well, police dogs are very brave and smart. They help officers find lost people and catch criminals, using their strong noses to smell things from far away.

المعلم : حسناً، الكلاب البوليسية شجاعة وذكية جداً. إنها تساعد الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين. باستخدام أنوفها القوية لشم الأشياء من بعيد.

Student: That's amazing! Do other dogs have jobs too?

الطالب : هذا مذهل! هل هناك كلاب أخرى لديها وظائف أيضاً؟

Teacher: Yes, some guide dogs are for blind people. They help them walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. They are very calm and careful.

المعلم : نعم، هناك بعض الكلاب المرشدة لأجل المكفوفين. إنها تساعدهم على المشي بأمان، وعبور الشوارع، والتجول دون التعرض للأذى. إنها هادئة وحذرة جداً.

Student: What about other animals?

الطالب : ماذا عن الحيوانات الأخرى؟

Teacher: Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better.

المعلم : الخيول تساعد الناس على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة. قضاء الوقت معها يمكن أن يجعل الشخص الحزين أو الخائف أن يشعر بتحسن كبير.

Student: Are there any animals that help in the water?

الطالب : هل هناك أي حيوانات تساعد في الماء؟

Teacher: Yes, in some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

المعلم : نعم، في بعض البلدان، تساعد دلافين الإنقاذ الأشخاص الذين يكونوا في خطر في البحر. تظهر لنا هذه الحيوانات أن مساعدة الآخرين هي وظيفة مميزة جداً.

S.B Answer the following questions.

- 1- What can police dogs find with their strong noses?
.....
- 2- How do guide dogs help blind people?
.....
- 3- What do rescue dolphins do for people in the sea?
.....
- 4- How do horses help people feel?
.....

Language

The Present continuous

المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن أفعال تحدث في هذه اللحظة (Actions happening now)

Key words الكلمات الدالة

اليوم today - في هذه اللحظة at the moment - حالا right now - الآن now

استمع! Listen! - انظرا! Look!

+ Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

I am ('m)
He, She, It, مفرد + is ('s) + (inf) + ing.
We, You, They, جمع are ('re) (المصدر)

- Ex: - I'm doing my homework now.
- The man is crossing the street.
- The dolphins are rescuing the boy in the sea.

- Negative الجملة المنفية

I am not ('m not)
He, She, It, مفرد + is not (isn't) + (inf) + ing.
We, You, They, جمع are not (aren't) (المصدر)

- Ex: - I'm not watching TV at the moment.
- The officers aren't running right now.
- The dog isn't moving around.

Yes / No question السؤال بهل

Am

Is + subject + (inf) + ing + تكملة ?

Are

المصدر الفاعل

Ex: - Are you working right now?

- Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

Wh-question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question

am

word

+

is

+

subject

+

(inf)

+

ing

+

تكملة ?

كلمة الاستفهام

are

المصدر

الفاعل

Ex: What are the officers doing at the moment?

- They are catching the criminal.

Check your language.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- Look! He is water.

- a) drank b) drinks c) drinking d) drink

2- I reading a book.

- a) am b) is c) are d) don't

3- She helping her mother now.

- a) am b) is c) are d) doesn't

4- They doing their homework at the moment.

- a) am b) is c) are d) do

5- The teachers are the students.

- a) help b) helping c) helped d) helps

6- The dog is fast.

- a) running b) run c) ran d) runs

7- The blind man is the street.

- a) cross b) crosses c) crossed d) crossing

Unit 4

8- My mother cooking lunch now.

- a) isn't b) aren't c) doesn't d) am not

9- What doing right now?

- a) are you b) do you c) is you d) you are

10- We are training

- a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) now d) last week

11- The police dog is loudly.

- a) bark b) barking c) barks d) barked

12- They watching TV now.

- a) aren't b) isn't c) don't d) doesn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- Mona is (draw) a picture.

2- We (is) singing.

3- I (no am) reading stories.

4- The dolphin is (swim) fast.

5- The guide dog (are) helping the old woman.

6- My parents (is) sleeping at the moment.

7- (You are) singing a song? - Yes, I am.

8- My sister is (study) today.

9- Look! The criminal (was) running.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- horse - now - What - the - carrying - is ?

2- at the - football - playing - are - The - boys - moment .

3- you - English - Are - studying - now ?

4- are - They - park - the - cleaning .

5- now - reading - Is - she - a - book ?

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Ahmed's uncle is a blind person. ()
- 2- Ahmed has a guide dog. ()
- 3- Ahmed visits his uncle on Friday. ()
- 4- The guide dog helps him move around and cross the road. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The helps officers to find lost people.
a) guide dog b) police dog c) dolphin d) horse
- 2- The guide dog helps people to walk safely.
a) happy b) sad c) blind d) lost
- 3- Dolphins are animals that help people who are in danger in the sea.
a) small b) rescue c) nervous d) loud
- 4- The police dogs are officers catch the criminal.
a) help b) helped c) helps d) helping
- 5- Horses are animals that make you feel and happy.
a) nervous b) scared c) calm d) lazy
- 6- The police dogs use their strong to smell things from far away.
a) legs b) hair c) noses d) hands
- 7- She is in the park.
a) walk b) walks c) walking d) walked
- 8- I swimming in the sea.
a) am not b) isn't c) aren't d) don't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(police - smart - criminal - guide - job)

Last week, I saw a (1)..... He was running away. The officers were running with a (2)..... dog to catch him. The police dogs are brave and (3)..... They use their strong sense of smell to find missing people. They can smell things from far away. Every animal has a real (4).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Fares. Last weekend, my father took us to Sharm el Sheikh. We went by car. We arrived at 10 a.m. We wanted to swim in the sea and see dolphins. They are rescue animals. They can help people who are in danger in the sea. My brother Ahmed was happy because he likes dolphins. My father took us to ride horses, too. I was very excited because I like horses. They can make me feel happy and relaxed.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The underlined word "They" refers to

- a) horses b) dolphins c) Ahmed d) his father

2- Fares likes very much.

- a) dolphins b) horses c) dogs d) cats

B Answer the following questions.

3- Why are dolphins rescue animals?

.....

4- How can horses help Fares?

.....

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- He is (encourage) his friends.
- 2- We are (take) medicine now.
- 3- She (bake) a cake at the moment.
- 4- Listen! They (is) singing.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1-jobs - What kind - police - does - of - the - dog - do ?

2-special - is - a very - others - job - Helping.

3-calm - The - is - dog - and - guide - careful .

4-feel - much - helps - people - horse - better - The.

5-people - help - Where - do - dolphins - rescue ?

6-can - lost - Police - people - dogs - find .

7 Punctuate the following.

police dogs have strong noses

where do rescue dolphins help people

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Animals' jobs"

(guide dog - dolphin - horses)

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



water buffalo

جاموس الماء



donkey

حمار



pigeon

حمامة



scarab beetle

خنفساء الجعران



falcon

صقر



gecko

برص / سحلية صغيرة

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

plough

load

hardworking

daily lives

planting

notes

way

cage

fertilizer

rats

between

active

goods

useful

helper

محراث

حمولة

مجتهد

الحياة اليومية

زراعة

ملاحظات

طريقة

قفص

سماد

فئران

بين

نشط

بضائع

مفيد

مساعد

water containers

supplies

narrow

baskets

ripe dates

route

plants

letters

transportation

the earth

cart

fields

messengers

farmer

أوعية / حاويات مياه

مستلزمات / مؤن

ضيق

سلات / سلال

تمر ناضج

طريق / مسار

نباتات

رسائل

النقل / المواصلات

الأرض / التربة

عربة تجرها الحيوانات

حقول

رسل / حاملي الرسائل

مزارع / فلاح

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
pull	يسحب / يجر	pulled		transport	ينقل	transported	
prepare	يجهز	prepared		damage	يتلف	damaged	
disappear	يختفي	disappeared		hunt	يصطاد	hunted	
create	ينشأ / يخلق	created					

Irregular verbs

make	يجعل / يصنع	made	grow	ينمو	grew
fly	يطير	flew			

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

make soil better for	يجعل التربة أفضل لـ	break down waste	يحلل النفايات
find its way home	تجد طريقها للمنزل	on farms	في المزارع
climb on walls	تتسلق الجدران	fly over	يطير فوق
during the evening	أثناء المساء	look for	يبحث عن
play special roles	يقوم بأدوار مميزة	wait for	ينتظر من أجل

Words and meanings

كلمات ومعانيها

falcon: a fast bird that hunts animals in fields

الصقر: طائر سريع يصطاد الحيوانات في الحقول

scarab beetle: an insect that helps make soil better for plants

خنفساء الجعران: حشرة تساعد في جعل التربة أفضل للنباتات

donkey: a hardworking animal that carries heavy loads

الحمار: حيوان مجتهد يحمل حمولات ثقيلة

gecko: a small lizard that eats insects inside houses

البرص: سحلية صغيرة تأكل الحشرات داخل المنازل

pigeon: a bird that can find its way home from far away

الحمامة: طائر يمكنه أن يجد طريقه لمنزله من مسافة بعيدة

water buffalo: a strong animal that pulls ploughs on farms

الجاموس: حيوان قوي يجر المحاريث في المزارع

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- A scarab is an insect that helps make soil better for planting.
a) buffalo b) beetle c) pigeon d) gecko
- 2- The donkey is a hardworking animal that carries heavy
a) narrow b) ripe c) cage d) loads
- 3- The falcon is a fast that can hunt animals in fields.
a) animals b) insect c) bird d) lizard
- 4- Water buffaloes pull on farms.
a) dates b) notes c) ploughs d) pigeons
- 5- climb on walls and eat insects.
a) Geckos b) Falcons c) Pigeons d) Donkeys



Main Points

- Many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives.
العديد من الحيوانات تعمل بجد لتساعد الناس في حياتهم اليومية.
- Water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields to prepare the soil for planting crops.
جاموس الماء يجر المحاريث عبر الحقول لتجهيز التربة للزراعة المحاصيل.
- Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. They transport crops, water containers, and supplies through narrow streets.
الحمير تحمل الحمولات الثقيلة عبر القرى وإلى الأسواق، فهم ينقلوا المحاصيل وحاويات المياه والمستلزمات عبر الشوارع الضيقة.
- Pigeons carry notes and letters between different places and work as messengers.
الحمام يحمل الملاحظات والرسائل بين الأماكن ويعمل كموصل رسائل.
- Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals like rats that damage crops.
الصقور تساعد المزارعون عن طريق صيد الحيوانات الصغيرة مثل الفئران التي تتلف المحاصيل.

- Geckos climb on walls and eat insects. They are most active during the evening.
- الأبراص تتسلق الجدران وتأكل الحشرات. فهم ناشطون غالباً خلال المساء.
- Scarab beetles work in the soil. They break down waste and help to make the earth better for growing plants.
- خنفساء الجعران تعمل في التربة. فهي تحلل المخلفات وتساعد في جعل التربة أفضل لزراعة النباتات.

Reading : Animal Helpers

حيوانات مساعدة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields. Right now, a farmer is working with his water buffalo to prepare the soil for planting crops.

في مصر، تعمل العديد من الحيوانات بجد لمساعدة الناس في حياتهم اليومية. في المزارع، تجرّ جواميس الماء القوية المحارث عبر الحقول. الآن، يعمل مزارع مع جاموس الماء الخاص به لتجهيز التربة لزراعة المحاصيل.

Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. They transport crops, water containers, and supplies through narrow streets. At this moment, a donkey is probably walking to the market with baskets full of ripe dates. The donkeys know their routes very well.

تحمل الحمير أحمالاً ثقيلة عبر القرى وإلى الأسواق. فهي تنقل المحاصيل وأوعية المياه والمؤن عبر الشوارع الضيقة. في هذه اللحظة، من المحتمل أن يسير حمار إلى السوق حاملاً سلالاً مليئة بالتمور الناضجة. الحمير تعرف طرقها جيداً.

Pigeons have an important job as messengers. They carry notes and letters between different places.

أما الحمام، له وظيفة مهمة كحامل رسائل. فهو يحمل الملاحظات والرسائل بين الأماكن المختلفة.

Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. You might see a falcon flying over a field, looking for rats to catch. These birds fly high in the sky. In homes, geckos climb on walls and eat insects. They are most active during the evening.

تساعد الصقور المزارعين بصيد الحيوانات الصغيرة التي تلحق الضرر بالمحاصيل. قد ترى صقراً يحلق فوق حقل. باحثاً عن الفئران ليصطادها. هذه الطيور تحلق عاليًا في السماء. في المنازل، تتسلق السحالي الجدران وتأكل الحشرات. وهي أكثر نشاطاً في المساء.

Scarab beetles work in the soil. They break down waste and help make the earth better for growing plants. All these animals - water buffaloes, donkeys, pigeons, falcons, geckos, and scarab beetles - play special roles in our life. They show how people and animals can work together and help each other in many useful ways.

تعمل خنافس الجعران في التربة. حيث تحلل النفايات وتساعد في جعل الأرض أفضل لنمو النباتات. وتؤدي جميع هذه الحيوانات - الجاموس المائي، والحمير، والحمام، والصقور، والسحالي، وخنافس الجعران - أدوارًا خاصة في حياتنا. فهي تظهر كيف يُمكن للبشر والحيوانات العمل معًا ومساعدة بعضهم البعض بطرق مفيدة عديدة.

(S.B) * **Answer the following questions.**

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

- 1- If all the falcons disappeared, what problem would a farmer have?
- 2- Why is a water buffalo so important for a farmer before any plants can start to grow?

Language

The Present simple

المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الأشياء التي تكون دائمًا حقيقة (الحقائق) أو أشياء تحدث بشكل منتظم (عادات)، والوظائف (Facts, Habits, and jobs).

Key words الكلمات الدالة

أحياناً sometimes - غالباً often - عادة usually - دائمًا always
- never أبدًا - every وقت - (day - week) - on Fridays

+ Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

I, We, You, They, مصدر الفعل + (inf) + جمع
He, She, It, + (inf) + s / es / ies مفرد

- Ex: - I always go to work at 8 o'clock every day. (Job / Habit)
- The sun rises in the morning. (Fact)
- Mona usually visits the zoo on Friday. (Habit)
- Water buffaloes pull ploughs. (Job)

Negative الجملة المنفية

I, We, You, They, جمع + do not (**don't**) مصدر الفعل + (**inf**)
He, She, It, مفرد + does not (**doesn't**)

- Ex: - Falcons **don't hunt** at night.
 - I **don't study** on Fridays.
 - Ahmed **doesn't like** insects.

Yes / No question السؤال بهل

Do + **I, we, you, they,** جمع + (**inf**) + تكملة ?
Does + **he, she, it,** مفرد (المصدر)

- Ex: Do animals help people in Egypt?
 - Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
 Does a gecko play a special role?
 - Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.

Wh-question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Wh - word + **do** + **I, we, you, they,** جمع + (**inf**) + تكملة ?
 كلمة الاستفهام + **does** + **he, she, it,** مفرد (المصدر)

- Ex: What do pigeons help people do?
 - They carry messages.
 How does Youssef go to school?
 - He goes to school by bus.

Check your language: Present Simple

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- farmers use donkeys for transportation?
 a) Are b) Does c) Do d) Is
 2- The donkey supplies every day to the home.
 a) carry b) carries c) carrying d) carried

- 3- Scarab beetles the earth better for growing plants.
 a) make b) makes c) making d) is making
- 4- Animals hard to help people in their daily lives.
 a) working b) works c) work d) is working
- 5- Pigeons carry letters in most places today.
 a) isn't b) aren't c) doesn't d) don't
- 6- How the scarab beetle help the farmers?
 a) do b) does c) is d) are
- 7- The donkeys get tired quickly.
 a) don't b) isn't c) aren't d) doesn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Donkeys (transports) goods to the market on Fridays.
- 2- The gecko (aren't) climb the wall every day.
- 3- The falcon sometimes (flying) over the fields.
- 4- (Is) the pigeons carry messages between villages?
- 5- How (does) water buffaloes help farmers?

Check your language: Present Simple & Present Continuous

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Look! The falcon is over the field right now.
 a) flew b) flies c) flying d) fly
- 2- Donkeys carrying heavy baskets to the market.
 a) am b) is c) are d) do
- 3- Falcons hunt at night.
 a) don't b) doesn't c) is d) aren't

- 4- The pigeons flying at the moment; they are in their cage.
a) are b) aren't c) is d) isn't
- 5- The water buffalo isn't the plough now; it is resting.
a) pull b) pulls c) pulling d) are pulling
- 6- The scarab beetle is the soil for planting crops.
a) prepare b) prepares c) preparing d) prepared
- 7- Donkeys always goods to the market.
a) transport b) transports c) are transporting d) transporting
- 8- A gecko insects every evening.
a) eat b) eats c) are eating d) is eating
- 9- Is the farmer on the farm at the moment?
a) work b) works c) worked d) working
- 10- What a scarab beetle do?
a) do b) is c) does d) am
- 11- the donkeys carry things every day?
a) Are b) Is c) Do d) Does

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- A pigeon (**isn't**) carry letters every day.
- 2- (**Do**) a gecko eat insects? - Yes, it does.
- 3- The donkey (**carry**) a heavy load at the moment.
- 4- The pigeons (**doesn't**) flying today.
- 5- (**Does**) the water buffaloes working in the field right now?
- 6- What (**are**) the falcons hunt?
- 7- Donkeys (**carrying**) loads every day.
- 8- They (**am not**) working on the farm today.
- 9- The water buffalo (**isn't**) work in the city.
- 10- (**Are**) farmers use donkeys for transportation?

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- pull - Water - every - ploughs - day - buffaloes .

2- eat - Does - insects - gecko - a ?

3- don't - Falcons - night - animals - at - hunt .

4- hunting - Is - falcon - the - at - moment - the ?

General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- The falcon is very fast. It can animals in fields.

- a) speak b) hunt c) carry d) help

2- My father likes very much. They can find their routes.

- a) dogs b) falcons c) donkeys d) buffaloes

3- My uncle's donkey can carry baskets of dates.

- a) bad b) ripe c) fast d) happy

4- Pigeons can carry between different places to help people.

- a) dates b) apples c) messages d) baskets

5- Donkeys heavy things every day.

- a) carry b) carries c) carrying d) carried

6- Do you in a field near the school?

- a) work b) works c) worked d) working

7- The farmer seeds in the field now.

- a) plant b) is planting c) plants d) planted

8- What he watching on TV today?

- a) do b) does c) are d) is

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(find - pigeons - crops - fish - Falcons)

I like birds very much. I searched on the internet about (1)....., and falcons. Pigeons can fly long distances and (2)..... their way easily. (3)..... can help farmers by hunting animals that damage (4)..... You can see them flying over a field looking for rats to catch.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

All animals have an important job. Water buffaloes help pull ploughs through the fields. They help farmers prepare the soil for planting crops. Donkeys can carry heavy loads through fields. They can find their way very well. They can walk through narrow streets. Water buffaloes and donkeys are very useful for farmers. They can help very well on farms. They are very important animals.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) cows b) buffaloes c) donkeys d) dogs
- 2- Donkeys and water buffaloes can help farmers on
a) schools b) farms c) streets d) homes

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- How can donkeys help farmers?
.....
- 4- Why are water buffaloes important?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

Unit 4

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- We (aren't) go to school on Fridays.
- 2- They aren't (does) exercises now.
- 3- My friend (watch usually) matches at home.
- 4- Where (do) your brother usually go on holiday?
- 5- Falcons (eats) rats and small animals.
- 6- I (read) a new English book right now.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- today - the water - working - Are - buffaloes - the field - in ?
.....
- 2- insects - Geckos - eat - climb - and - walls - on .
.....
- 3- transportation - use - for - Do - donkeys - farmers ?
.....
- 4- right - now - carrying - What - the - donkey - is ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

they aren't working very hard

.....

how can animals help people

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your favorite animal"
(help - important - work)

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

cows
أبقارsheep
أغنام / خرافguard dogs
كلاب حراسة

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

farm animals

حيوانات المزرعة

barn

حظيرة

fresh

طازج

workers

عمال

drinking

شرب

all year

طوال العام

cheese

جبنة

sweater

سترة

happily

بسعادة

blanket

بطانية

grass

عشب

smart

ذكي

thick

سميك

around

حول

warm

دافئ

near

بالقرب

wool

صوف

kind

طيب / عطوف

chickens

دجاج

gently

برقة

mice

فئران

factory

مصنع

grain

حبوب

land

أرض

area

منطقة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
visit	يزور	visited		learn	يتعلم	learned	
guard	يحرس	guarded		raise	يربي	raised	
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained		milk	يحلب	milked	

Unit 4

Irregular verbs

see	يرى	saw	cut	يقطع	cut
give	يعطي	gave	lay	تبيض / تضع	laid

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

milking a cow	يحب بقره	take care of	يعتني بـ
once a year	مرة في العام	to keep them safe	ليبقىهم سالمين
lay eggs	تبيض / تضع البيض	in many ways	بطرق عديدة
watching over	يراقب		

Words and their definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

farmer

a person who grows food and raises animals

المزارع : الشخص الذي يزرع الطعام ويربي الحيوانات

field

an area of land with grass for animals

الحقل : منطقة من الأرض ذات عشب للحيوانات

sheep

a farm animal that gives us thick wool to make clothes

خروف : حيوان مزرعة يعطينا صوف سميك لصنع ملابس

guard dog

an animal that protects others

كلب حراسة : حيوان يحمي الآخرين

Check your Vocab.

1

(S.B) Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(farmer – cows – sheep – guards)

Omar is visiting his uncle, the (1), on the farm. He sees (2) that give us milk. He also sees (3) that give us wool. A dog (4) the animals on the farm.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- We use the sheep wool to make
a) cheese b) sweaters c) grass d) milk
- 2- The horses pull around the farm.
a) carts b) cars c) sheep d) cows
- 3- Donkeys are strong and can carry loads.
a) light b) warm c) heavy d) sad
- 4- An area of land with grass for animals is a
a) mountain b) desert c) field d) sea



Main Points

- There are many animal helpers that are working hard.
- يوجد الكثير من الحيوانات المساعدة الذين يعملون بجد.
- Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese.
- الأبقار تعطينا لبن طازج كل يوم للشرب وصنع الجبن.
- Sheep eat grass and have thick, warm wool that grows all years.
- الأغنام تأكل العشب ولديها صوف سميك دافئ ينمو طوال العام.
- Workers cut the wool to make sweaters and blankets.
- العمال يقصوا الصوف ليصنعوا سترات و بطاطين.
- A smart dog is watching over the sheep carefully to guard and keep them safe.
- الكلب الذكي يراقب الأغنام بحرص لكي يحرصهم ويبقيهم سالمين.
- Near the barn, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast.
- بالقرب من الحظيرة تضع الدجاجات البيض كل صباح للإفطار.
- The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the grain.
- القطة تساعد في الإمساك بالفئران التي ربما تأكل الحبوب.
- The horses help pull carts around the farm.
- الخيول تساعد في جر العربات حول المزرعة.
- Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads.
- الحمير قوية ويمكنها حمل الأحمال الثقيلة.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The cows are in the field. "Look! The farmer is milking a cow now," says Omar happily. Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese.

يزور عمر وعائلته مزرعة عمه اليوم. يرون العديد من الحيوانات التي تعمل بجد. الأبقار في الحقل. يقول عمر بسعادة: "انظروا! المزارع يحلب بقرة الآن". تعطينا الأبقار حليبًا طازجًا كل يوم للشرب ولصنع الجبن.

They walk to another field where sheep are eating grass. The sheep have thick, warm wool that grows all year. Once a year, workers carefully cut the wool to make sweaters and blankets. A smart dog is watching over the sheep carefully. The dog's job is to guard the sheep. Right now, the dog is running around the sheep to keep them safe.

يمشون إلى حقل آخر تأكل الأغنام العشب. الأغنام لديها صوف كثيف ودافئ الذي ينمو على مدار العام. مرة في السنة، يقوم العمال بقص الصوف بعناية لصنع السترات والبطانيات. يوجد كلب ذكي يحرس الأغنام بعناية. مهمة الكلب هي حماية الأغنام. الآن، يركض الكلب حول الأغنام ليحافظ على سلامتها.

Near the barn, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast. The family sees a cat sleeping in the sun. The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the grain. Omar's uncle explains, "We take good care of all our animals, and they take care of us too." He shows Omar how the horses help pull carts around the farm. Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads. "We must always be kind to our animal helpers," the uncle says gently.

قرب الحظيرة، تضع الدجاجات البيض كل صباح للإفطار. ترى العائلة قطعة نائمة تحت أشعة الشمس. تساعد القطعة في اصطيد الفئران التي قد تأكل الحبوب. يشرح عم عمر قائلاً: "نعتني جيداً بجميع حيواناتنا، وهي تعتني بنا أيضاً". يُري عمر كيف تساعد الخيول في جر العربات في أرجاء المزرعة. الحمير قوية وتستطيع حمل أوزان ثقيلة. يقول العم بلطف: "يجب أن نكون دائماً لطفاء مع حيواناتنا التي تساعدنا".

Omar learns that farm animals are hard workers who help people in many ways. يتعلم عمر أن حيوانات المزرعة عمال مجتهدون يساعدون الناس بطرق عديدة.

(S.B) 1 Answer the following questions.

1- What do cows give us?

2- What do sheep have?

3- What is the dog's job?

B) Words Building skills

Words with the suffixes (-er / -or / -ist)

er

farmer

مزارع

teacher

معلم

helper

مساعد

painter

رسام

EX : farm er (say "farm" strong, "er" soft).

ننطق المقطع (farm) قوي و المقطع (er) هادئ.

or

visitor

زائر

inventor

مخترع

doctor

طبيب

actor

ممثل

- The strong part is before "-or".

الجزء الذي ينطق قوي يكون قبل (or).

ist

specialist

متخصص

scientist

عالم

EX : specialist (say "spe" strong, "-cial - ist" quick).

- ننطق المقطع (spe) قوي و المقطعين (-cial - ist) بسرعة.

Other words

wheat

قمح

directions

اتجاهات

corn

ذرة

world wide

في جميع أنحاء العالم

artwork

عمل فني

play

مسرحية

1

Fill in the blanks with the right ending. Use -er, -or, or -ist to complete the word.

1- farm

2- visit

3- special

4- help

5- teach

2 Choose the correct suffix (-er, -or, -ist) to complete the words.

- 1- My uncle is a farm who plants wheat and corn.
- 2- She wants to be a scient and discover new things.
- 3- The visit asked for directions to the ancient temple.
- 4- The act performed his role in the play perfectly.
- 5- He is a great paint whose artwork is famous worldwide.

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Ahmed went to his uncle's farm. ()
- 2- The weather was very hot. ()
- 3- They saw cows, sheep, and buffaloes. ()
- 4- Ahmed drank fresh milk. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My grandmother is the cow right now.
a) eating b) drinking c) milking d) sleeping
- 2- We use the of the sheep to make clothes.
a) leather b) skin c) feather d) wool
- 3- The guard dog is watching over the carefully.
a) cars b) sheep c) dogs d) blankets
- 4- Horses can help the farmers pull around the farm.
a) cows b) carts c) farm d) grain
- 5- My aunt usually up early in the morning.
a) get b) gets c) getting d) got
- 6- The falcon over the field right now.
a) fly b) flying c) is flying d) flies
- 7- Where do farmers in the morning?
a) work b) works c) working d) worked

- 8- They plant rice in winter.
 a) don't b) aren't c) isn't d) aren't
- 9- What is the donkey now?
 a) carry b) carries c) carrying d) carried
- 10- The gecko eat grass. It eats insects.
 a) wasn't b) doesn't c) isn't d) weren't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(farmer - barn - sweaters - cow - doctor)

Every day on the farm is busy and fun. In the morning, the (1)..... wakes up early to feed the animals. The (2)..... gives fresh milk. The sheep give us wool for (3)..... and blankets. Near the (4)....., chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast. There are guard dogs that keep the sheep safe. Cats are also useful. They eat mice.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We have a big farm near the Nile. We raise animals and grow crops. Last week, I invited my friends to come to the farm. They enjoyed seeing the animals on the farm. They saw a farmer milking a cow to have fresh milk. My friends enjoyed drinking the delicious, fresh milk. There were sheep with white and brown wool. A farmer gave them wool sweaters to help them keep warm in winter. We had a delicious breakfast including fresh vegetables, fresh eggs, and cheese. We enjoyed our day.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "They" refers to
 a) dogs b) horses c) cows d) friends
- 2- The cow gives us fresh
 a) rice b) apples c) milk d) juice

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the text about?

- 4- What did the farmer give them?

Unit 4

4- What did the farmer give them?

5- What did they have for breakfast?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- We must (is) kind to animals.

2- Look! The sheep (eat) grass in the field.

3- What (do) the smart dog doing right now?

4- The (farm) takes care of animals.

5- What job do you (thinking) the horses do?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- to keep - The - safe - dog - around - running - them - is - the sheep .

2- pull - Horses - help - carts - the - around - farm .

3- every - give - milk - Cows - fresh - day .

7 Punctuate the following

did you visit your uncle's farm

the cat helps by chasing mice

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Farm animals"
(horse - sheep - cow)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

feathered	ذو ريش	suddenly	فجأة
wildlife	حياة برية	quickly	بسرعة
documentary	فيلم وثائقي	sharp	حاد
narrator	راوي	beak	منقار
egret	طائر أبو قردان	hoppers	الجراد
long	طويل	back	ظهر
flies	ذباب	alongside	بجانب
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	healthier	أكثر صحة
different	مختلف	natural	طبيعي
insect control	مكافحة الحشرات	single day	يوم واحد

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
harm	يُؤذي / يضر	harmed		bother	يزعج / يضايق	bothered	
raid	يهاجم فجأة	raided		provide	يمد / يزود	provided	
need	يحتاج	needed		spot	يلاحظ / يكتشف	spotted	
mind	يُمانع	minded		appreciate	يُقدّر	appreciated	

Irregular verbs

stand	يقف	stood	eat	يأكل	ate
-------	-----	-------	-----	------	-----

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

on the screen	على الشاشة
get a better view	يحصل على رؤية أفضل
make them easy to spot against	يجعلهم سهلين للرؤية (للرصد) مقابل
hundreds of	مئات من
in a single day	في يوم واحد



Main Points

- Egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops.
- طيور أبو قردان تساعد المزارعين عن طريق أكل الحشرات التي تضر المحاصيل.
- The egret raids quickly with its sharp beak to catch hoppers that eat the rice plants.
- أبو قردان يهاجم بسرعة بمنقاره الحاد ليمسك الجراد الذي يأكل نباتات الأرز.
- They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view.
- يقفوا أحيانا على ظهر الجاموس ليحصلوا على رؤية أفضل.
- The egret eats flies that bother buffaloes, and the buffaloes don't mind.
- أبو قردان يأكل الذباب الذي يزعج الجاموس، والجاموس لا يمانع في ذلك.
- Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds.
- المزارعون لا يحتاجوا إلى استخدام الكثير من المواد الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور.
- Their white feathers make them easy to spot against the green plants.
- ريشهم الأبيض يجعل من السهل رؤيتهم مقابل النباتات الخضراء.
- Farmers appreciate them because they provide natural insect control.
- المزارعون يُقدِّروهم لأنهم يوفروا مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Egrets sometimes stand on the buffaloes' to get a better view.
a) legs b) backs c) hands d) beaks
- 2- Ali is watching a wildlife about animal helpers right now.
a) narrator b) feathers c) insects d) documentary
- 3- Farmers egrets because they provide natural insect control.
a) eat b) fly c) appreciate d) raid
- 4- The egret eats that bother the buffaloes.
a) cats b) flies c) birds d) plants
- 5- Farmers don't need to use many because of egrets.
a) chemicals b) insects c) fields d) buffaloes

Reading : The Farmer's Feathered Friend

صديق الفلاح ذو الريش

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now. The narrator says that egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. Suddenly, the egret raids quickly with its sharp beak. It is catching hoppers that eat the rice plants. Egrets have long legs that help them walk through water. These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields. They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view. The egret eats flies that bother the buffalo, and the buffalo doesn't mind. Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds. This makes the food healthier for people to eat. Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in a single day. They fly to different fields to find their food. Their white feathers make them easy to spot against the green plants. Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.

أشاهد الآن فيلمًا وثائقيًا عن الحياة البرية عن الحيوانات المساعدة. يقول الراوي أن طيور أبو قردان تساعد المزارعين من خلال أكل الحشرات التي تضر المحاصيل. على الشاشة، يقف طائر أبو قردان الأبيض في الحقل. فجأة، يهاجم أبو قردان بسرعة بمنقاره الحاد. إنه يصطاد الجراد الذي يأكل نباتات الأرز. لدى طيور أبو قردان أرجل طويلة تساعد على المشي عبر الماء. غالبًا ما تعمل هذه الطيور جنبًا إلى جنب مع جاموس الماء في الحقول. يقفون أحيانًا على ظهور الجاموس للحصول على رؤية أفضل. يأكل أبو قردان الذباب الذي يزعج الجاموس، والجاموس لا يمانع. لا يحتاج المزارعون إلى استخدام الكثير من المواد الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور. وهذا يجعل الطعام أكثر صحة للناس لتناوله. يمكن أبو قردان الأبيض أن يأكل مئات الحشرات في يوم واحد. يطيرون إلى حقول مختلفة للعثور على طعامهم. ريشها الأبيض يجعل من السهل اكتشافها مقابل النباتات الخضراء. ويُقدّر المزارعون هذه الطيور الجميلة لأنها توفر مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.

Answer the following questions.

1- Why do farmers appreciate the egrets?

.....

2- How do egrets help buffaloes?

.....

Descriptive writing

الكتابة الوصفية

- لكتابة فقرة وصفية يجب أن تقوم بـ:

1- **Choose a topic:** pick an animal helper.

١- اختر موضوع مثل: اختيار حيوان مساعد.

2- **Use strong adjectives:** sharp, patient, beautiful, natural.

٢- استخدم صفات قوية مثل: حاد ، صبور ، جميل ، طبيعي.

3- **Show, don't tell:** Instead of "The egret is helpful," write "The egret is catching harmful insects in the rice field."

٣- أَرِ ، لا تخبر: أي بدلاً من استخدام جملة " أبو قردان مفيد" ، اكتب أبو قردان يصطاد الحشرات الضارة في حقل الأرز.

4- **Use the correct tense:** Use the present simple for habits / jobs and present continuous for what is happening now.

٤- استخدم الزمن الصحيح: استخدم المضارع البسيط عند التحدث عند العادات أو الوظائف ، و استخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عما يحدث الآن.

5- **Organize your ideas:** start with what you see, describe the job, and finish with your opinion.

٥- نظم أفكارك: ابدأ بما تراه ، و صف وظيفته ، وانهي برأيك.

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Amr sees farms and egrets on his way to school. ()
- 2- The egret eats insects and hoppers. ()
- 3- The egret has no beak. ()
- 4- The egret helps the buffalo. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- When the egret sees the hopper, it it quickly.
a) raids b) sleeps c) eat d) drink
- 2- The egret helps the farmers use few
a) water b) sun c) chemicals d) care
- 3- Look! The pigeon with a message.
a) fly b) flies c) is flying d) flew
- 4- Water buffaloes usually ploughs on farms.
a) pull b) pulls c) is pulling d) pulled

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(bother - egret - hoppers - legs - ears)

The white (1)..... is an important bird. It has long (2)..... that help walk through water and a sharp beak to catch (3)..... and insects. It also stands on the buffaloes' backs to watch the field. It also helps buffaloes by eating insects that (4)..... them. Farmers appreciate the egrets because they provide natural insect control.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- I love my English (teach) because he is kind.
- 2- The (special) could help fix the problem.
- 3- The donkey (go) home at the moment.
- 4- We (aren't) go to school at night.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- The - is - friend - egret - farmer's - feathered - the .

.....

Unit 4

2- helping - usually - animals - see - Do - you ?

3- spot - easy - white - them - feathers - make - Their - to .

6 Punctuate the following.

I m watching birds on the farm

what does the egret eat

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"The egret"
(legs - hopper - feather)

Important vocabulary

police dogs
guide dogs
guard dogs
rescue dolphins
horses
blind people
officer
criminal
bark
upset
nervous
sleepy
messengers
cow
sheep
wool
gently
inventor
actor
wildlife
chemicals
hoppers

كلاب بوليسية
كلاب إرشاد
كلاب حراسة
دلافين إنقاذ
خيول
المكفوفين
ضابط
مجرم
نباح
منزعج
عصبي / متوتر
نعسان
حامي الرسائل
بقرة
خروف / أغنام
صوف
برقة
مخترع
ممثّل
حياة برية
كيماويات
جراد

water buffalo
donkey
pigeon
scarab beetle
falcon
gecko
plough
load
container
narrow
supplies
goods
transportation
grain
field
sweater
blanket
feathered
egret
documentary
insect control
beak

جاموس الماء
حمار
حمامة
خنفساء الجعران
صقر
برص
محراث
حمولة
حاوية
ضيق
مؤن
بضائع
النقل
حبوب
حقل
سترة
بطانية
ذو ريش
أبو قردان
فيلم وثائقي
مكافحة حشرات
منقار

Unit 4

Important verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
rescue	ينقذ	rescued		cross	يعبر	crossed	
pull	يسحب / يجر	pulled		hunt	يصطاد	hunted	
prepare	يجهز	prepared		guard	يحرس	guarded	
milk	يحب	milked		raise	يربي	raised	
harm	يضر	harmed		raid	يهاجم فجأة	raided	
appreciate	يقدر	appreciated		bother	يزعج	bothered	

Irregular verbs

stand	يقف	stood	fly	يطير	flew
lay	تبيض	laid	catch	يمسك	caught
smell	يشم	smelt	find	يجد	found

Important paragraphs

Animals' jobs

Some animals have real jobs, just like people do. Police dogs help police find lost people and catch criminals using their strong sense of smell. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better.

Animal helpers

Many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. Water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields to prepare the soil for planting crops. Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. Pigeons carry notes and letters between different places and work as messengers. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals like rats that damage crops. Scarab beetles work in the soil. They break down waste and help to make the earth better for growing plants.

Farm animals

There are many animal helpers that are working hard. Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese. Sheep have thick, warm wool that grows all year. Workers cut the wool to make sweaters and blankets. A guard dog keeps sheep safe. Chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast. The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the grain. The horses help pull carts around the farm. Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads.

The egret

Egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. The egret catches hoppers that eat the rice plants. They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view. The egret eats flies that bother buffaloes. Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds. Farmers appreciate them because they provide natural insect control.

Important language

Present simple

Affirmative

I, We, You, They + (inf)

He, She, It + (inf + s / es / ies)

I like films. / She likes films.

Negative

Sub + don't / doesn't + (inf)

They don't play tennis.

The boy doesn't watch TV.

Question

Do / Does + sub + (inf) ?

Wh- word + do / does + sub + (inf) ?

Do you help your mother?

What does she do?

Present continuous

Sub + am / is / are + (inf + ing)

I am reading a book now.

She is cooking at the moment.

Sub + am not / isn't / aren't + (inf + ing)

Look! He isn't studying.

We aren't singing today.

Am / Is / Are + sub + (inf + ing) ?

Wh- word + am / is / are + sub + (inf + ing) ?

Are you reading right now?

What is he doing?

Top students.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Water buffaloes (pull - are pulling) ploughs on Egyptian farms.
- 2- Look! The pigeon (carries / is carrying) a message right now.
- 3- Geckos (eat / are eating) insects in homes.
- 4- Right now, the scarab beetle (works / is working) in the soil.

Find the mistakes and write the sentences in the correct form.

- 1- The farmer work with his buffalo now.

.....

- 2- Donkeys is carrying heavy baskets to the market.

.....

- 3- Falcons fly over the fields right now.

.....

- 4- A gecko eat insects every evening.

.....

- 5- Pigeons are carry messages between villages.

.....

- 6- The scarab beetle is prepare the soil for planting crops every day.

.....

General Test on unit 4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Animals help us live safely. ()
- 2- Police dogs can help engineers. ()
- 3- Blind people use police dogs to move around. ()
- 4- Guide dogs are calm and careful dogs. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Falcons hunt at night. They hunt in the morning.
a) isn't b) doesn't c) don't d) aren't
- 2- My sister helps my mother cows.
a) eat b) drive c) milk d) sleep
- 3- The donkey is heavy loads at the moment.
a) carry b) carries c) carrying d) carried
- 4- The cat helps farmers mice that eat the grain.
a) feed b) catch c) draw d) play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(legs - egret - dolphin - harm - farmers)

The white (1)..... is an amazing bird. It helps (2)..... in the field. It eats insects that (3)..... the crops. It has a sharp beak and tall (4)..... that help it walk through water. It often works alongside water buffaloes in the field.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our Egyptian farms are very rich in animals that are very important and can help farmers. Cows can give us fresh milk and cheese. Farmers like to milk them in the morning. Donkeys are also important for farmers. They can carry heavy loads to the market. They can know their routes alone. Sheep give us good wool. Farmers cut their wool carefully. We use it to make blankets and sweaters.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "them" refers to
 a) cows b) donkeys c) farmers d) sheep
- 2- Sheep give us to make blankets.
 a) milk b) wool c) grass d) plants

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Mention two animals that can help farmers on farms.

- 4- Why are donkeys important?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- My sister (doesn't) drawing now. She is sleeping.
- 2- Where (does) your parents go on holidays?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- year - grow - wool - The sheep - warm - all - have - that .

- 2- farmers - help - water - do - Egyptian - buffaloes - How ?

7 Punctuate the following.

what do horses help people feel

Blind people don't cross roads safely

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Animals"

(dolphins - horses - dogs)

Al-Azhar Test on unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- have an important job as messengers.
a) Falcons b) Pigeons c) Cows d) Dogs
- 2- Pigeons can carry between different places.
a) loads b) book c) letters d) people
- 3- Falcons help farmers by hunting small
a) farmers b) animals c) cows d) notes

2 Read and complete the dialog.

(relax - jobs - Rescue - sea)

Ali : Do you know that animals have different (1)..... ?

Adam: Really? What kind of jobs do dolphins do?

Ali : (2)..... dolphins can save people in danger.

Adam: Do they live in rivers?

Ali : No, they live in the (3)..... .

Adam: What job do horses do?

Ali : They help people (4)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- A is an insect that helps make soil better.
a) donkey b) scarab beetle c) falcon d) cow
- 2- Water buffaloes pull on farms to help farmers.
a) pigeons b) ploughs c) farmers d) dogs
- 3- What job does a gecko ?
a) does b) do c) doing d) did
- 4- We aren't because the baby is sleeping now.
a) sing b) sings c) sang d) singing

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1- Does the falcons hunt at night? (.....)
- 2- Geckos eats insects. They are amazing. (.....)
- 3- My sister are doing her homework right now. (.....)
- 4- Look! The boys run in the garden fast. (.....)

5th PRIM. SECOND TERM

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Farmers can't grow well without animals. They are very important. Donkeys can carry heavy loads to the market. Cows can give them milk and cheese. Water buffaloes are also important. They pull ploughs through fields to prepare the soil for planting crops.

A Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Animals aren't important for farmers. ()
- 2- Donkeys can carry heavy loads to the market. ()

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Cows give us cheese and
 a) water b) milk c) eggs d) grass
- 4- Water buffaloes pull ploughs through
 a) desert b) water c) fields d) animals
- 5- Water buffaloes prepare the for planting crops.
 a) farmer b) soil c) streets d) books

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Farm animals"
(cow - donkey - soil - water buffaloes)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Our Solar System

نظامنا الشمسي

Unit five



Objectives

Vocabulary :

- solar system, galaxy, planetarium. Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Milky Way, space, astronaut, farther, describe, imagine, realize, universe, messy, shook, sighed, spaceship, rocket, landed, star ball, rolling, alien, soft clouds, glowing.

Language in Use :

- Comparatives and Superlatives: bigger than, smaller than, the largest)

Life Skills :

- Curiosity – Exploration – Communication

Core Value :

- Responsibility – Collaboration

Integrated Learning Activities :

- Space Travel Brochure

1 LESSON

From Mercury to Neptune

من عطارد إلى نبتون

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

the solar system	المجموعة الشمسية	Mercury	عطارد
the Sun	الشمس	Venus	الزهرة
the Moon	القمر	Earth	الأرض
galaxy	مجرة	Mars	المريخ
planetarium	القبة السماوية / الفلكية	Jupiter	المشتري
planet	كوكب	Saturn	زحل
Milky Way	درب التبانة	Uranus	أورانوس
stars	نجوم	Neptune	نبتون

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

screen	شاشة	space	فضاء
iron-rich soil	تربة غنية بالحديد	facts	حقائق
interesting	شيق	famous for	مشهور بـ
shiny rings	حلقات لامعة	jokes	نكت / مواقف مضحكة
exciting	مثير / ممتع جدًا		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
look	ينظر / يبدو	looked		explore	يستكشف	explored	
name	يسمى	named		explain	يشرح	explained	
follow	يتبع	followed		remember	يتذكر	remembered	

Irregular verbs

learn	يتعلم	learnt	make	يصنع / يجعل	made
-------	-------	--------	------	-------------	------



Main Points

- The galaxy is a group of many stars. - المجرة هي مجموعة من نجوم كثيرة.
- The solar system is inside a galaxy. - المجموعة الشمسية تكون داخل مجرة.
- Mars is called the Red Planet because its iron-rich soil makes it look red. - يسمى المريخ بالكوكب الأحمر لأن تربته غنية بالحديد الذي يجعله أحمر.
- Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system. - المشتري أكبر الكواكب في المجموعة الشمسية.
- Mercury is the smallest planet. - عطارد هو أصغر كوكب.
- Saturn is famous for its shiny rings around it. - يشتهر زحل بالحلقات اللمعة حوله.
- Our galaxy is called the Milky Way. - تسمى مجرتنا بدرب التبانة.
- Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars are small planets. - عطارد والزهرة والأرض والمريخ كواكب صغيرة.

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- Mars is called the Planet because of its iron-rich soil.
a) Blue b) Red c) Black d) Green
- 2- is the largest planet in the solar system.
a) Mercury b) Venus c) Jupiter d) Saturn
- 3- Saturn is for its rings.
a) bad b) famous c) good d) healthy
- 4- Our school went on a trip to the to see the planets.
a) park b) garden c) Pyramids d) planetarium
- 5- We enjoyed watching in the sky at night.
a) grass b) stars c) games d) animals
- 6- There are shiny around Saturn.
a) fields b) animals c) planets d) rings
- 7- The solar system is inside the Milky Way
a) car b) galaxy c) bag d) bus

Reading : A Trip to the Planetarium

رحلة إلى القبة السماوية

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

"At the space museum, Amina, Omar, and a guide talk about planets and stars."

"في متحف الفضاء ، أمينة وعمر و "مرشد يتحدثوا عن الكواكب والنجوم."

Guide: Welcome, everyone, to the planetarium! Today, we will learn about the solar system.

المرشد: أهلاً وسهلاً بالجميع في القبة السماوية! اليوم سوف نتعرف على المجموعة الشمسية.

Amina: Wow! Oh, look at the big screen. I can see the Sun and the Moon.

أمينة: يا للعجب! أوه، انظروا إلى الشاشة الكبيرة. أستطيع أن أرى الشمس والقمر.

Guide: Mars is called the Red Planet because its iron-rich soil makes it look red.

المرشد: يُسمى المريخ الكوكب الأحمر لأن تربته الغنية بالحديد تجعله يبدو أحمر اللون.

Amina: Ohhh, that's interesting!

أمينة: أوه، هذا مثير للاهتمام!

Omar: Yeah! I see the planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars.

عمر: أجل! أرى الكواكب: عطارد، الزهرة، الأرض، والمريخ.

Guide: Good job! Those are the four small planets. Can you name a big one?

المرشد: أحسنت! هذه هي الكواكب الأربعة الصغيرة. هل يمكنك تسمية كوكب كبير؟

Amina: Is it Jupiter?

أمينة: هل هو كوكب المشتري؟

Guide: Yes! Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

المرشد: نعم! كوكب المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في المجموعة الشمسية.

Omar: And those shiny rings-are they around Saturn?

عمر: وتلك الحلقات اللامعة - هل هي حول كوكب زحل؟

Guide: Exactly! Saturn is famous for its rings.

المرشد: بالضبط! يشتهر كوكب زحل بحلقاته.

Amina: Wow, so many stars!

أمينة: يا للعجب، نجوم كثيرة جدًا!

Guide: Yes, they are part of a galaxy. Our galaxy is called the Milky Way.

المرشد: نعم، إنها جزء من مجرة. مجرتنا تسمى درب التبانة.

Omar: So the solar system is inside it?

عمر: إذن، النظام الشمسي موجود بداخلها؟

Guide: Exactly! The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to explore.

المرشد: بالضبط! الشمس والقمر والكواكب تجعل استكشاف الفضاء أمرًا مثيرًا.

Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box.

(rings - Mars - largest - Milky)

- 1- Jupiter is the planet in the solar system.
- 2- is called the Red Planet.
- 3- Saturn has shiny around it.
- 4- Our galaxy is called the Way.

Listening Tip!

نصيحة للاستماع!

Good listeners pay attention to:

المستمعون الجيدون ينتبهون إلى:

Key words (names, numbers, places)

الكلمات الدلالية (أسماء، أرقام، أماكن)

Main ideas (what the speaker is mostly talking about)

الأفكار الرئيسية (ما يتحدث عنه المتحدث في الغالب)

Details (facts that give extra information)

التفاصيل (حقائق تُقدّم معلومات إضافية)

Remember: You don't need to understand every single word to get the meaning!

تذكر: لست بحاجة إلى فهم كل كلمة على حدة لفهم المعنى!

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- The school arranged a trip to Alexandria. ()
- 2- They are going to visit the planetarium. ()
- 3- Jupiter is the largest planet in our solar system. ()
- 4- Mars has shiny rings around it. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- We visited the to learn about the solar system.
a) library b) planetarium c) restaurant d) playground
- 2- All planets move around the Sun in the
a) forest b) solar system c) ocean d) desert
- 3- looks red because of its iron-rich soil.
a) Venus b) Mars c) Jupiter d) Earth
- 4- Our galaxy is called the Way.
a) planet b) galaxy c) Milky d) moon
- 5- is famous for its shiny rings.
a) Mars b) Saturn c) Jupiter d) Venus
- 6- A galaxy is a group of many
a) stars b) animals c) pens d) bags

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(Sun – Earth – solar – galaxy – largest)

Last weekend, our class visited the planetarium. Inside, we learned about the (1)..... system. The teacher explained that the (2)..... is at the center of the solar system, and planets like (3)..... and Saturn move around it. We also saw images of the Moon and many stars in our (4)..... . It is amazing to see how everything in space is connected.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A planetarium is a place where we learn about space. Inside the planetarium, we can see the Sun, the Moon, and the planets on a big screen. It is interesting to learn about planets. The Red Planet is Mars. It has iron-rich soil that makes it look red. The scientists say that Mars is the most interesting planet to explore. The four small planets are Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars. Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system. Saturn is famous for its shiny rings. Mercury is the smallest planet. Earth is the planet where we live. It has water for living things. The solar system is very big and full of amazing things.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Mars looks red because of its iron-rich
a) water b) air c) gas d) soil
- 2- is the largest planet in the solar system.
a) Saturn b) Venus c) Jupiter d) Mercury

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What makes Saturn famous?
.....
- 4- Why can we live on Earth?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Saturn (are) famous for its shiny rings.
- 2- Do you (wants) to visit the planetarium?
- 3- Jupiter is the (large) planet.
- 4- Mars (are) called the Red Planet.
- 5- Earth is the planet where we (lives).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- Stars - part - are - of - galaxy - a - the .

2- has - Saturn - shiny - around - rings - it .

3- is - called - the - Our - galaxy - Way - Milky .

4- planet - Mercury - the - is - smallest .

5- exciting - explore - make - The planets - space - to .

6- Mars - Moon - Do - want - the - or - visit - you - to ?

7 Punctuate the following.

which planet is your favorite

mars is called the Red Planet

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A trip to the planetarium"
(solar system – largest – galaxy)

From Egypt to the Galaxy

(Sara Sabry : Reaching for the Stars)

من مصر إلى المجرة (سارة صبري : الوصول إلى النجوم)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

astronaut	رائد فضاء	the universe	الكون
Egyptian female	إمراة مصرية	young people	الشباب
first	أول	dreams	أحلام
engineer	مهندس	nothing	لا شيء
Arab	عربي	impossible	مستحيل
fuel	وقود	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية
mission	مهمة		

Adjectives

الصفات

small	صغير	cold	بارد
hot	حار	far	بعيد
dry	جاف	big	كبير
large	كبير	drier	أكثر جفافاً
distant	بعيد		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
travel	يسافر	traveled		describe	يصف	described	
inspire	يلهم	inspired		realize	يدرك	realized	
believe	يعتقد	believed		compare	يقارن	compared	
work	يعمل	worked		imagine	يتخيل	imagined	

Irregular verbs

become	يصبح	became	say	يقول	said
--------	------	--------	-----	------	------

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

looking at	النظر إلى	travel into space	يسافر في الفضاء
described as	يوصف بـ	compared to	مقارنة بـ
on the Moon	على القمر	farther away	أبعد
up close	عن قرب		

Check your Vocab.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My father is a great He travels into space.
a) doctor b) pilot c) astronaut d) tourist
- 2- Good teachers students to learn.
a) inspire b) eat c) run d) play
- 3- The galaxy is than we imagine. It's amazing.
a) bigger b) happier c) faster d) shorter
- 4- You should work hard to achieve your
a) books b) cars c) sleep d) dreams
- 5- You should try hard. Nothing is to do.
a) good b) important c) impossible d) exciting
- 6- Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian astronaut.
a) male b) female c) animal d) instrument
- 7- This season is than last year.
a) dry b) drier c) big d) small



Main Points

Lesson 2

- Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut.
- سارة صبري هي أول رائدة فضاء مصرية.
- She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022.
- أصبحت أول مهندسة عربية تسافر إلى الفضاء في ٢٠٢٢.
- She wants to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible.
- تريد أن تلهم الشباب في مصر أن يتبعوا أحلامهم ويؤمنوا أنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل.
- Mercury is smaller than Earth.
- كوكب عطارد أصغر من كوكب الأرض.
- Venus is hotter than Earth and Saturn has beautiful rings.
- كوكب الزهرة أكثر حرارة من كوكب الأرض ، وكوكب زحل لديه حلقات جميلة.
- Mars is drier than Earth and Jupiter is the largest planet.
- كوكب المريخ أكثر جفافاً من كوكب الأرض ، وكوكب المريخ هو أكبر الكواكب.
- Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away.
- كوكبي أورانوس ونبتون أكثر برودة وأبعد.
- Seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is compared to the universe.
- رؤية كوكب الأرض من الفضاء جعلها تدرك إلى أي مدى يكون كوكبنا صغير مقارنة بالكون.

Reading : Egypt's First Astronaut

أول رائدة فضاء مصرية

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. Sara says "I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible."



سارة صبري هي أول رائدة فضاء مصرية. أصبحت أول مهندسة عربية تسافر إلى

الفضاء عام ٢٠٢٢. تقول سارة: "أريد أن ألهم الشباب في مصر لمتابعة أحلامهم والإيمان بأنه لا شيء مستحيل."

5th PRIM. SECOND TERM

In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets. She explains: Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is drier than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings, and Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away.

في عملها، درست المجموعة الشمسية والكواكب. وتوضح قائلة: عطارد أصغر من الأرض. الزهرة أكثر حرارة من الأرض. المريخ أكثر جفافاً من الأرض، بينما المشتري هو أكبر الكواكب. زحل له حلقات جميلة، وأورانوس ونبتون أكثر برودة وأبعد.

Sara describes looking at the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our galaxy. "The galaxy is bigger than we imagine," she says. Seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is compared to the universe.

تصف سارة النظر إلى الشمس والقمر والنجوم في مجرتنا. وتقول: "المجرة أكبر مما نتخيل." رؤية الأرض من الفضاء جعلتها تدرك مدى صغر كوكبنا مقارنة بالكون.

Answer the following questions.

- 1- In what year did Sara Sabry travel into space?
- 2- Which two planets are described as colder and farther away?

Language

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

- عند مقارنة الصفة القصيرة التي تتكون من مقطع واحد نستخدم:

المقارن الثاني + (er + than + صفة) + فعل + المقارن الأول

- Uranus is **colder than** Earth.

- Venus is **hotter than** Earth.

Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة

- عند مقارنة الصفة الطويلة التي تتكون من أكثر من مقطع نستخدم:

المقارن الثاني + **than** + صفة + أكثر **more** + فعل + المقارن الأول
المقارن الثاني + **than** + صفة + أقل **less**

Ex: Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.

Iron is **less expensive than** gold.

Superlative Adjectives

صفات التفضيل

- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل لإظهار أن شيئاً واحداً هو الأكثر في مجموعة من ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر :

Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

المجموعة / النوع + (**the** + صفة + **est**) + الفعل + طرف التفضيل

- Jupiter is **the largest** planet.
- The giraffe is **the tallest** animal.

Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة

المجموعة / النوع + صفة + (**the most / the least**) + الفعل + طرف التفضيل

- Football is **the most exciting** game in the world.
- Neptune is **the most distant** planet from the sun.
- Mercury is **the least distant** planet from the sun.

Notes

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن يحول حرف (y) الى (ier) ونضيف (er / est).
- heavy → heavier / heaviest happy → happier / happiest
- Mars is **drier** than Earth.
- Crocodiles are the **scariest** animals.
- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.
- big → bigger / the biggest thin → thinner / the thinnest
- Jupiter is **bigger** than Earth.
- Jupiter is **the biggest** planet.

Irregular adjectives

صفات غير منتظمة

Adjective

Comparative

Superlative

good	جيد	→	better than	أفضل من	→	the best	الأفضل
bad	سيء	→	worse than	أسوأ من	→	the worst	الأسوأ
far	بعيد	→	farther than	أبعد من	→	the farthest	الأبعد

- Jupiter is **farther** from the sun than Earth.
- Mohammed Salah is **the best** player.

Check your Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- 1- Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.
- 2- A cat is (small) than a dog.
- 3- Today is (cold) than yesterday.
- 4- My house is (big) than my friend's house.
- 5- That cake is the (sweet) in the bakery.
- 6- Venus is the (hot) planet in the solar system.
- 7- Jupiter is (colorful) planet in the solar system.
- 8- Summer is (popular) season for holidays.
- 9- Neptune is (more) distant planet from the Sun.
- 10- The lion is (strong) animal in the zoo.
- 11- English is (easy) than science.
- 12- Ahmed is the (good) boy in the class.
- 13- Cars are (bad) than bikes. They damage our environment.
- 14- Ali is (fast) than his brother.
- 15- Winter is (cold) than summer.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- Solar power is than fuel in long space missions.
a) useful b) more useful c) the most useful d) more cold
- 2- Mars is than Mercury.
a) cold b) colder c) coldest d) more cold
- 3- The Sun is star in our solar system.
a) bright b) brighter c) the brightest d) more bright
- 4- Mars is planet for scientists to explore.
a) interesting b) more interesting
c) the most interesting d) most interestingly

- 5- Summer is the season in the year.
 a) hot b) hotter c) hottest d) colder
- 6- Mercury is than Earth.
 a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) biggest
- 7- Gold is than iron.
 a) most expensive b) more expensive
 c) expensive d) least expensive
- 8- Neptune is the planet from the Sun.
 a) far b) farther c) farthest d) nearer
- 9- Earth is Mercury.
 a) the biggest b) bigger c) bigger than d) biggest
- 10- The giraffe is taller the monkey.
 a) that b) then c) this d) than

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The coach tried to the team before the match.
 a) waste b) inspire c) cancel d) lose
- 2- She is the student in the class.
 a) smart b) smarter c) smartest d) more smart
- 3- He walked away from the house.
 a) near b) farther c) slow d) early
- 4- My house is than yours.
 a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tall
- 5- I my mistake, so I said sorry.
 a) forgot b) break c) realized d) carried
- 6- Jupiter is the planet in our solar system.
 a) large b) largest c) small d) smallest
- 7- Mars is the interesting planet to explore.
 a) more b) most c) less d) better

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.
(dreams – rings – solar – universe – inspire)

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She wants to (1) young people to follow their (2) She realized how small our planet is compared to the (3) She says, "Believing in your goals makes anything possible." Her work focuses on studying the (4) system and its planets. We learned from her that nothing is impossible to do and achieve.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Laila Youssef is a bright Egyptian student. She likes science very much. Her mother always helps her. She dreams of being an astronaut one day. She started her journey in 2024. She says, "I want to inspire young students in Egypt. Everyone should believe that nothing is impossible if you work hard." Laila studies the planets in our solar system. She explains some facts. Mercury is smaller than Earth. Mars is much colder than Earth. Jupiter is the largest planet, and it is also farther away from the Sun than Mars." She loves looking at the stars. She realized how small our planet is compared to the universe.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Laila Youssef is a bright Egyptian student. She started her journey in
 a) 2022 b) 2023 c) 2024 d) 2025
- 2- The underlined pronoun "She" refers to
 a) Egypt b) Laila c) mother d) father

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does Laila want to do for young students in Egypt?

4- Which planet is smaller than Earth?

5- What is the main idea of the text?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- He is the (tall) student in the class.

2- This book is more interesting (then) that one.

3- English is the (more) useful subject for me.

4- An elephant is (big) than a horse.

5- He is the (thin) player in the team.

6- Dalia is the (more) careful student in the class.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- This - house - is - the - in - the - biggest - street .

2- is - Mars - than - Earth - drier .

3- Mercury - smaller - is - Earth - than .

6 Punctuate the following.

which planet is the most interesting

earth is more beautiful than Venus

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Egypt's first astronaut"
(inspire - largest - planets)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

poster	ملصق / لوحة إعلانية	beginning	البداية
project	مشروع	himself	بنفسه / بمفرده
schoolwork	عمل مدرسي	messy	فوضوي / غير مرتب
science class	حصة العلوم	quietly	بهدوء
classmates	زملاء الفصل	rings	حلقات
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	facts	حقائق
color pencils	أقلام تلوين	bright	لامع / ساطع
chart	مخطط / قائمة	clear	واضح
worried	قلق	easier	أسهل
largest	الأكبر	neat	أنيق
farthest	الأبعد	thin	رفيع
teamwork	عمل جماعي	paper	ورق
better	أفضل	tools	أدوات
early	مبكراً	alone	بمفرده
circles	دوائر	drawing	الرسم
writing	الكتابة		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
finish	ينتهي	finished		color	يلون	colored	
sigh	يتنهد	sighed		smile	يبتسم	smiled	

Irregular verbs

draw	يرسم	drew	shake	يهز رأسه بالرفض	shook
sit	يجلس	sat	write	يكتب	wrote
take	يأخذ	took			

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

took too long

استغرق وقت طويل جدًا

I want it my way

أريدها بطريقي

Can I help?

هل يمكنني المساعدة؟

In the end

في النهاية

by himself

بنفسه

Words and their definitions:

كلمات و تعريفها

poster

a big paper with pictures and writing

ملصق / لوحة إعلانية: ورقة كبيرة بها صور وكتابة

color pencils

tools for drawing and coloring

أقلام تلوين: أدوات للرسم والتلوين

messy

not clean or not neat

فوضوي: ليس نظيف أو ليس أنيق

rings

thin circles around Saturn

حلقات: دوائر رفيعة حول كوكب زحل

teamwork

working together to finish something

عمل جماعي: العمل معًا لإنهاء شيئًا ما

Check your Vocab.

S.B اقرأ واكمل. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.
(messy - teamwork - poster - rings - color pencils)

- 1- The teacher asked the student to make a about planets.
- 2- Adam's pictures looked because he worked alone.
- 3- Nada used her to color Mars red.
- 4- Saturn has beautiful around it.
- 5- The students learned that makes the job easier.

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Nada and Adam were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets.

كان ندى وآدم زملاء في حصة العلوم. طلبت منهما معلمتهما صنع لوحة للفصل عن الكواكب.

At first, Adam wanted to do everything himself. He drew Mercury, Venus, and Earth. But the work took too long, and the sunlight colors looked messy. Nada sat quietly with her color pencils. "Can I help?" Nada asked.

في البداية، أراد آدم أن يفعل كل شيء بمفرده. رسم عطارد والزهرة والأرض. لكن العمل استغرق وقتاً طويلاً. وبدت ألوان ضوء الشمس غير مرتبة. جلست ندى بهدوء مع أقلام التلوين الخاصة بها. سألت ندى "هل يمكنني المساعدة؟"

Adam shook his head. "No, I want it my way." The next day, the homework chart still wasn't finished. The teacher looked worried. Adam sighed. "Okay, Nada, you can help."

هز آدم رأسه بالرفض "لا، أريدها على طريقي." في اليوم التالي، لم تكن قائمة الواجبات المنزلية قد اكتملت بعد. بدت المعلمة قلقة. تنهد آدم قائلاً "حسناً، ندى، يمكنك المساعدة."

Together, they worked after school. Nada colored Mars red and added rings to Saturn. Adam wrote facts: "Jupiter is the largest planet. Neptune is the farthest." When they finished, the planet poster was bright and clear. The teacher smiled. "Great teamwork!"

عملًا معًا بعد المدرسة. لونت ندى المريخ باللون الأحمر وأضافت حلقات إلى زحل. كتب آدم حقائق: "المشتري هو أكبر الكواكب. نبتون هو أبعدهما." عندما انتهيا، كانت لوحة الكواكب مشرقة وواضحة. ابتسمت المعلمة وقالت "عمل جماعي رائع!"

Nada and Adam smiled too. They learned something bigger than planets. Working together makes the job easier-and better.

ابتسمت ندى وآدم أيضاً. لقد تعلموا شيئاً أكبر من الكواكب. العمل معاً يجعل المهمة أسهل وأفضل.

S.B Answer the following question.

- 1- Why do you think Adam wanted to do all the work by himself at first?
- 2- How would the project be different if Nada helped from the beginning?

Exercises

Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The room looks I asked my sister for help.
a) tidy b) messy c) happy d) fast
- 2- It a long time to finish the puzzle.
a) took b) played c) slept d) helped
- 3- My brother his head when he looked at the time. He was too late.
a) cut b) helped c) drew d) shook
- 4- The planet poster was and clear. I liked it.
a) dirty b) bright c) sad d) messy
- 5- She Mercury very well. Her favorite hobby is drawing.
a) drew b) sang c) went d) visited

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. (color - drew - plants - Earth - sunlight)

Science is Aya's favorite subject. She likes it very much. At school, she wanted to do everything herself. She (1)..... Venus and (2)..... But it took too long, and the (3)..... colors looked messy. At the end, she used bright (4)..... pencils.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- science - Sandy - in - met - class - classmate - her .
.....
- 2- messy - The - looked - sunlight - colors .
.....
- 3- them - to - Their - poster - asked - teacher - make - a .
.....

Word Building Skills

B) Compound Words

- A compound words is made when two small words are joined together to make one new word.

- الكلمة المركبة تتكون عندما نضم كلمتين صغيرتين معًا لتكون كلمة جديدة.

Ex: **class**room = classroom (a room where you study).

sunlight = sunlight (light from the sun).

football = football (a game with a ball you kick).

- Sometimes compound words are written as one word (classroom) sometimes as two words (ice cream).

- أحياناً الأسماء المركبة تكتب ككلمة واحدة مثل : (classroom),

وأحياناً كلمتين مثل : (ice cream).

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

classroom	فصل دراسي	lunch box	صندوق الغذاء
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	bedroom	غرفة النوم
football	كرة القدم	toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان
schoolwork	عمل مدرسي	blackboard	سبورة
notebook	كراسة / مفكرة	storybook	كتاب قصص
pancake	فطيرة / بان كيك	friendship	صداقة
sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس	teamwork	عمل جماعي
snowman	رجل الثلج	hard work	العمل الجاد
starfish	نجم البحر	spaceship	سفينة فضاء

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Sara Sabry is the first American female astronaut. ()
- 2- She became the first Arab engineer to walk on the Moon in 2022. ()
- 3- Sara says, "I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams." ()
- 4- In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- are tools for drawing and coloring.
a) Color pencils b) Posters c) Rings d) Facts
- 2- Saturn has beautiful around it.
a) pencils b) rings c) posters d) walls
- 3- The room is very , so we should clean it.
a) messy b) clean c) happy d) tidy
- 4- The project was finished on time because of excellent
a) noise b) teamwork c) weather d) holiday
- 5- She her head to say "no".
a) built b) sold c) shook d) cooked
- 6- He when he finished all his homework.
a) sighed b) jumped c) sang d) ran

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(blackboard - easier - schoolwork - notebook - dark)

The sunlight filled the classroom. Maya focused on her (1).....
She wrote a short storybook in her (2)..... about a team that
won a football game. The teacher wrote the homework on the
(3)..... Maya believed that friendship and hard work
made everything (4)..... and hard work can solve
problems.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Lina and Omar had to find a hidden treasure using a guide map and tools. At first, Lina wanted to work alone, but the tools got messy and mixed up. The sun set quickly, and the forest became dark and hard to see through. Omar shook his head, suggesting a better path. Lina sighed and asked Omar for help. Together, they looked at the map. Omar knew where to go, and Lina used her tools correctly. Working as a team, they found the treasure box, and the teacher smiled. They learned that teamwork makes challenging, hard missions clearer and easier.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- At first, the tools got and mixed up.
a) clean b) fun c) messy d) bad
- 2- The opposite of the underlined word "alone" means
a) light b) short c) small d) together

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why did Lina ask Omar for help?
.....
- 4- What was the main lesson they learned?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Jupiter is (colorful) planet in the solar system.
- 2- Planes are (fast) than bikes.
- 3- They (was) classmates in science class.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1- Adam - a picture - drew - blackboard - the - on .

2- What - the - are - children - now - doing ?

3- is - planet - Jupiter - the - largest - solar - in - system - the .

7 Punctuate the following.

He drew Mercury, Venus, and earth

did you work alone or with a friend

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"The planet project"

(poster - took - teamwork)

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

trip	رحلة	light	ضوء
spaceship	سفينة فضاء	playground	فناء / ملعب
dream	حلم	swing	أرجوحة
living creatures	كائنات حية	slide	زحليقة
rocket	صاروخ	alien	مخلوق فضائي
outside	بالخارج	clouds	سحب
lamp	لمبة / مصباح	mountain	جبل
stars	نجوم	stone	حجر
forest	غابة	gas	غاز
metal	معدن	dust	غبار
billion	مليار	once	مرة
rocks	صخور	noise	ضوضاء
comet	مذنب	asteroid	كويكب
star-ball rolling			كرة على شكل نجمة تتدحرج

Adjectives

الصفات

round	مستدير	huge	ضخم	proud	فخور
loud	عالي الصوت	soft	ناعم	amazed	مدهش
dark	مظلم	glowing	متألأ / متوهج	amazing	مدهش
colorful	ملون	kind	عطوف / طيب		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
land	يهبط	landed		laugh	يضحك	laughed	

Irregular verbs

spin	يدور / يلف	spun		wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	
------	------------	------	--	---------	--------	---------	--

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

made of	مصنوع من	is shaped like	على شكل
on the ground	على الأرض	at the beginning of	في بداية
look like	يشبه	near the edge of	بالقرب من حافة
a band of stars	شريط من النجوم	across the night sky	عبر سماء الليل

Check your Vocab.



Choose the correct answer.

- 1- We can travel into space in a (stone - spaceship).
- 2- A / An (alien - comet) is a living creature that may live on another planet.
- 3- The Milky Way has rocks like comets and (asteroids - suns).
- 4- The stars are (kind - glowing) in the sky.
- 5- Spaceships can (land - laugh) on the Moon.
- 6- Planets (wake up - spin) around the Sun.



Main Points

- The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are.
- درب التبانة هي المجرة التي يكون فيها الأرض والشمس.
- It shaped like a big circle that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust.
- إنها على شكل دائرة كبيرة تدور، مليئة بالنجوم والغاز والغبار.
- The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars. It has planets, moons, and rocks like comets and asteroids.
- درب التبانة بها أكثر من ٢٠٠ مليار نجمة. يوجد بها كواكب وأقمار وصخور مثل المذنبات والكويكبات.
- Our solar system is part of the Milky Way. We live on Earth, the third planet from the sun.
- نظامنا الشمسي هو جزء من درب التبانة. نعيش على كوكب الأرض، الكوكب الثالث من الشمس.
- There maybe other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe- even bigger ones!
- ربما يوجد مجرات أخرى مثل درب التبانة في الكون أو حتى أكبر منها!

Reading : My Trip in a Spaceship

رحلتي في سفينة الفضاء

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with round windows. The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the dark sky. Outside, the bright Moon looked like a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky.



الليلة الماضية كان لدي حلم. كنت داخل مركبة فضائية كبيرة لامعة ذات نوافذ دائرية.

أصدر الصاروخ صوتاً عالياً وهو يصعد إلى السماء المظلمة. في الخارج، بدا القمر الساطع كالمصباح، والنجوم كانت كأضواء صغيرة في السماء.

When the spaceship landed. I saw a fun playground in space. The swings were made of light, and the slide looked so colorful. There was even a round star-ball rolling on the ground.

عندما هبطت المركبة الفضائية، رأيت ملعباً ممتعاً في الفضاء. كانت الأراجيح مصنوعة من الضوء، والزحليقة تبدو زاهية الألوان. حتى أن هناك كرة نجمية مستديرة تتدحرج على الأرض.

Then, a kind alien with big eyes smiled at me. He showed me his planet. The houses were like soft clouds, and the children played football with the glowing star-ball. We laughed and played together.

ثم ابتسم لي كائن فضائي لطيف ذو عينين واسعتين. أراني كوكبه. كانت البيوت تشبه الغيوم الناعمة، وكان الأطفال يلعبون كرة القدم بكرة نجم متهوج. ضحكنا ولعبنا معاً.

It was a happy and fun place. When I woke up, I still remembered the bright colors in space.

كان مكاناً مبهجاً وممتعاً. عندما استيقظت، كنت مازلت أتذكر الألوان الزاهية في الفضاء.



Answer the following questions.

1- Where was the narrator at the beginning of the dream?

.....

2- What did the narrator see when the spaceship landed?

.....

3- What were the houses on the alien's planet like?

.....

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Fact File : The Milky way galaxy

ملف حقائق : مجرة درب التبانة



What is the Milky Way?

The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are. It looks like a bright band of stars across the night sky. It is shaped like a big circle that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust.

مجرة درب التبانة هي المجرة التي يقع فيها كوكب الأرض والشمس. تبدو كشريط ساطع من النجوم عبر سماء الليل. وهي على شكل دائرة كبيرة تدور. مليئة بالنجوم والغاز والغبار.

What's Inside?

The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars! It has planets, moons, and rocks like comets and asteroids. The Sun is one of the stars near the edge of our galaxy.

تضم مجرة درب التبانة أكثر من ٢٠٠ مليار نجم! كما تحتوي على كواكب وأقمار وصخور مثل المذنبات والكويكبات. الشمس هي أحد النجوم القريبة من حافة مجرتنا.

Where Are We?

Our solar system is part of the Milky Way. We live on Earth, the third planet from the Sun. It takes the Sun about 230 million years to travel once around the Milky Way!

نظامنا الشمسي جزء من مجرة درب التبانة. نعيش على كوكب الأرض. الكوكب الثالث من الشمس. تستغرق الشمس حوالي ٢٣٠ مليون سنة لإكمال دورة واحدة حول مجرة درب التبانة!

Amazing Facts

The Milky Way is so huge that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it! When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy. There may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe- even bigger ones!

مجرة درب التبانة شاسعة لدرجة أن الضوء يستغرق حوالي ١٠٠ ألف سنة لعبورها! عندما ترى النجوم في سماء الليل، فأنت تنظر إلى مجرتنا. ربما توجد مجرات أخرى شبيهة بدرب التبانة في الكون. بل وربما أكبر منها!

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are. ()
- 2- It looks like a bright band of circles. ()
- 3- It is shaped like a big square that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust. ()
- 4- The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars! ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Astronauts travel in a to explore stars and planets.
a) airplane b) boat c) spaceship d) bicycle
- 2- Many stories say that may live on other planets.
a) fish b) birds c) aliens d) cats
- 3- After the long trip, the astronauts back on Earth.
a) climbed b) landed c) painted d) cooked
- 4- The star was in the dark sky.
a) sleeping b) glowing c) falling d) crying
- 5- The sky was full of
a) hard rocks b) soft clouds c) tall trees d) planets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(solar - galaxy - dust - spins - slide)

The Milky Way is a very large (1) that looks like a bright band of stars in the night sky. Our (2) system is just a small part of it. This galaxy is shaped like a giant circle that (3) around its center, carrying stars, gas, and (4) with it. It is amazing to think that we live on a small planet inside such a big system!

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last night, I had a dream. I was in a small, fast rocket. I saw the Moon and the stars. They were very bright. When the rocket landed, I saw a new planet. The ground was pink. I saw a friendly alien. He had big eyes and a big smile. The sky was orange and very beautiful. The houses on the planet looked like small cakes. We ate sweet fruits from the trees. We went to a playground. The swings and slides were very colorful. We played with a glowing ball. I met many new friends, and we played together. Then, I said goodbye and flew back home. It was a great dream! When I woke up, I was happy.

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The sky on the planet was and beautiful.
a) orange b) black c) white d) red
- 2- The opposite of the underlined word "new" is
a) old b) short c) small d) modern

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What did they do in the playground?
.....
- 4- What did an alien look like?
.....
- 5- How were the houses?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- Our - is - solar system - a part - Milky - of - Way - the .
.....
- 2- made - The - rocket - loud - noise - a .
.....

3- is - the - Way - What - Milky - inside ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- The Milky Way (have) over 200 billion stars.
- 2- The Sun (are) one of the stars near the edge of our galaxy.
- 3- When the spaceship landed, I (see) a fun playground in space.
- 4- The Sun is the (big) star in our galaxy.
- 5- The planet is (small) than the Sun.
- 6- Mars is (beautiful) than Mercury.

7 Punctuate the following.

the houses were like soft clouds

what is inside the alien's spaceship

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A trip in a spaceship"

(landed - stars - rocket)

Important vocabulary

the solar system	المجموعة الشمسية	Mercury	عطارد
the Sun	الشمس	Venus	الزهرة
the Moon	القمر	Earth	الأرض
galaxy	مجرة	Mars	المريخ
planetarium	القبة السماوية	Jupiter	المشتري
planet	كوكب	Saturn	زحل
Milky Way	درب التبانة	Uranus	أورانوس
stars	نجوم	Neptune	نبتون
astronaut	رائد فضاء	engineer	مهندس
the universe	الكون	young people	الشباب
mission	مهمة	poster	ملصق / لوحة إعلانية
teamwork	عمل جماعي	largest	الأكبر
messy	فوضوي	farthest	الأبعد
circles	دوائر	rings	حلقات
sandoastle	قلعة رملية	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
trip	رحلة	living creatures	كائنات حية
rocket	صاروخ	comet	مذنب
star-ball rolling	كرة على شكل نجمة تتدحرج	asteroid	كويكب
dust	غبار	alien	مخلوق فضائي
glowing	متلألأ / متوهج	round	مستدير
colorful	ملون		

Important verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
look	ينظر / يبدو	looked		inspire	يلهم	inspired	
explore	يستكشف	explored		imagine	يتخيل	imagined	
remember	يتذكر	remembered		follow	يتبع	followed	
explain	يشرح	explained		travel	يسافر	traveled	
sigh	يتنهد	sighed		color	يلون	colored	
land	يهبط	landed		laugh	يضحك	laughed	

Irregular verbs

spin	يدور / يلف	spun	shake	يهز رأسه بالرفض	shook
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	draw	يرسم	drew
write	يكتب	wrote	take	يأخذ	took
become	يصبح	became	say	يقول	said
learn	يتعلم	learnt	make	يصنع / يجعل	made

Important language

- عند المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع الصفات القصيرة نستخدم:

المقارن الثاني + **er + than** + صفة + فعل + المقارن الأول

Ex: Neptune is **farther than** Earth.

- عند المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع الصفات الطويلة نستخدم:

المقارن الثاني + **than** + صفة + **more** / **less** + فعل + المقارن الأول

Ex: Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.

- عند التفضيل مع الصفات القصيرة نستخدم:

المجموعة + **est** + صفة + **the** + الفعل + طرف التفضيل

Ex: Jupiter is **the largest** planet.

- عند التفضيل مع الصفات الطويلة نستخدم:

المجموعة + صفة + **the most / the least** + الفعل + طرف التفضيل

Ex: Neptune is **the most** distant planet from the Sun.

Top students

Find the mistakes and write the correct form of the word.

- 1- My brother is tall than me. (.....)
- 2- The cheetah is the fast land animal. (.....)
- 3- The ship is large than the boat. (.....)
- 4- Marwa is the helpful student in our class. (.....)
- 5- This problem is difficult than the last one. (.....)

Important Paragraphs

A trip to the planetarium

We went to the planetarium last week. We learnt about the solar system. Mars is called the Red Planet. Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system. Saturn is famous for its shiny rings around it. The solar system is inside a galaxy. Our galaxy is called the Milky Way. It was an amazing trip.

Egypt's first astronaut

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. She wants to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible. Seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is compared to the universe.

The Milky Way Galaxy

Earth and the Sun are in the Milky Way Galaxy. It looks like a bright band of stars across the night sky. It is shaped like a big circle that spins. It is full of stars, gas, and dust. The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars! It has planets, moons, and rocks like comets and asteroids. We live on Earth, the third planet from the Sun. The Milky Way is so huge! When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy.

A trip in a spaceship / A dream in the space

I dreamed that I had a trip in a spaceship. I was inside a big spaceship. The rocket made a loud noise. When the spaceship landed, I saw a fun playground in space. I saw shiny stars. I met a friendly alien and he showed me his planet. It was a happy and fun place. I was very happy.

General Test on unit 5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Our solar system is part of the Milky Way. ()
- 2- The light takes about 3 years to cross the Milky Way. ()
- 3- When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy. ()
- 4- There may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The astronaut checked the before the long journey.
a) book b) spaceship c) swing d) slide
- 2- This book is interesting than the movie.
a) more b) most c) the d) then
- 3- The Milky Way is a that contains billions of stars.
a) planet b) galaxy c) asteroid d) moon
- 4- My house is the house in the village.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) more big

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(slide - alien - glowing - spaceship - walked)

Last night, I dreamed I was in a big, shiny (1)..... The rocket flew high into the sky until it landed on a new planet. I saw a park with light-up swings and a colorful (2)..... A round star-ball was rolling on the ground, and a kind (3)..... asked me to play. We played basketball with the (4)..... ball and had so much fun. It was a wonderful dream!

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Akram Abdellatif is a famous Egyptian engineer. He wants to inspire young people in Egypt to love science. He wants them to learn that they can do great things if they work hard. Akram describes what it is like to study space. He says that Mars is much drier than Earth. It is also much farther away than the Moon. Other planets are very different and can be colder or darker when they are compared to Earth. He tells students to imagine traveling to the stars one day. Akram says that our universe is very big and there is still so much for us to learn!

A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- According to Akram, Mars is much than Earth.
 a) wetter b) greener c) drier d) smaller
- 2- The underlined pronoun " He " refers to
 a) people b) space c) Akram d) planets

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Who is Akram Abdellatif?

- 4- What does Akram hope people will do one day?

- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1- Do - want - you - visit - to - Jupiter - Mars - or ?

- 2- is - than - colder - Today - yesterday .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- Jupiter is the (larger) planet in our solar system.
- 2- The sofa is (most) comfortable than the wooden chair.

7 Punctuate the following.

do you think there could be other living creatures

jupiter is the most colorful planet in the solar system

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A dream about the space"

(stars - landed - shiny)

Al-Azhar Test on unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Last, I had a dream.
a) night b) day c) weekend d) month
- 2- I was inside a big, shiny
a) moon b) spaceship c) sun d) planet
- 3- The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the sky.
a) small b) light c) dark d) long

2 Read and complete the dialog.

(stars - shape - galaxy - circle)

Fatma : Hello, Teacher Salma! What is the Milky Way?

Teacher Salma: The Milky Way is the (1)..... where Earth and the Sun are.

Fatma : Does it look like a bright band?

Teacher Salma: Yes, it looks like a bright band of (3)..... across the night sky.

Fatma : What's the (4)..... of it?

Teacher Salma: It is shaped like a big (5)..... that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The class went to the to watch a show about the stars.
a) museum b) planetarium c) cinema d) school
- 2- She is the runner in the team.
a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) more fast
- 3- makes a group stronger and more successful.
a) Anger b) Teamwork c) Fear d) Silence
- 4- My brother is than me.
a) tall b) tallest c) taller d) more tall

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1- This is the more beautiful dress in the shop. (.....)
- 2- Jupiter is the large planet in the solar system. (.....)

- 3- A plane is fastest than a car. (.....)
- 4- We live on Jupiter, the third planet from the Sun. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

We went to the planetarium. It was a fun trip. We sat in big seats. We looked up at a big screen. We saw the solar system. The Sun is very hot. Then, we saw Mars. It is the Red Planet. It is a small planet. Next, we saw Jupiter. It is the largest planet. It is very big. We saw Saturn too. It is famous for its rings. The rings are made of ice. We saw many bright stars. They are in the galaxy. Our galaxy is the Milky Way. We saw the Moon. It is white and bright. Space is big and dark. We liked to learn about space. It was a good day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Our galaxy is called the
a) Red Planet b) Milky Way c) Sun d) Jupiter
- 2- In the planetarium, the students looked up at a
a) window b) table c) big screen d) door

B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What makes Jupiter different from all the other planets?
.....
- 4- What did they see?
.....
- 5- Summarize text in one sentence.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Egypt's first astronaut"

(inspire - solar system - young people - Earth)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Offline but Happy

غير متصل لكن سعيد

Unit six



Objectives

Vocabulary :

- tablet, Wi-Fi, level, excited, bored, lonely, rode, called out, whispered, breeze, sidewalk, chalk, sticks, sunset

Language in Use :

- Past Simple Tense

Life Skill(s) and Value(s) :

- Life Balance
- Healthy Habits

Core values :

- Team Spirit Friendship

The Story Characters

شخصيات القصة



Tarek



Amir



Laila



Dina

The Setting

المكان والزمان

Place: park - home

المكان: الحديقة - المنزل

Time: Friday morning

الوقت: صباح يوم الجمعة

The moral of the story

الدرس المستفاد من القصة

Friends are more fun than screens.

الأصدقاء أكثر مرحاً من الشاشات.

Key vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



tablet
تابليت / جهاز لوحي



sidewalk
رصيف / ممر



bored
يشعر بالملل



chalk
طباشير



sticks
عصي



sunset
غروب الشمس

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

clear	صافي	silent	صامت
level	مستوى	empty	فارغ
proudly	بفخر	quiet	هادئ
power button	زر التشغيل	videos	فيديوهات
game	لعبة	old	قديم
message	رسالة	interesting	شيق
internet	انترنت	running	الجري
online	متصل بالانترنت	lonely	وحيد
nothing	لا شيء	laughing	الضحك
down	منخفض / قليل	softly	بنعومة / بركة
outside	بالخارج	sunshine	ضوء الشمس
fun / joy	مرح / متعة	cool	بارد / رائع
without	بدون	breeze	نسمة هواء
impossible	مستحيل	minimal use	استخدام بسيط / محدود
giant	ضخم / عملاق	friendship	صداقة
smiling	مبتسم	stomach	معدة
castle	قلعة	hide-and-seek	لعبة الاستغماية
rocket ship	صاروخ فضائي	louder	أعلى
leaves	أوراق شجر	round	جولة
pretend shop	متجر وهمي	real	واقعي / حقيقي
upset	قلق / مرتبك		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
nod	يوميء برأسه	nodded	replace	يستبدل	replaced
whisper	يهمس	whispered	frown	يعبس / يكشر	frowned
grab	يمسك	grabbed	work	يعمل	worked
reach	يصل	reached	race	يتسابق	raced
press	يضغط	pressed	sigh	يتنهد	sighed
miss	يفقد	missed	laugh	يضحك	laughed
wait	ينتظر	waited	step	يخطو	stepped
wave	يلوح بيده	waved	hand	يعطي / يناول	handed

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
sit	يجلس	sat	hurt	يؤلم	hurt
build	يبني	built	spend	يقضي	spent

Expression and prepositions

التعبير وحروف الجر

jumped out of bed	قفز من سريره
called out	نادى بصوت عالي
smile from ear to ear	يبتسم من الأذن للأذن (ابتسامة عريضة)
popped up	ظهر فجأة على الشاشة
shook his head	هز رأسه بالرفض
for a few minutes	لعدة دقائق
is back / come back	يعود
covered in	مغطى بـ
the best day ever	أفضل يومًا إطلاقًا
from that day on	من هذا اليوم فصاعدًا
"No internet connection!"	"لا اتصال بالإنترنت!"
But after a while	لكن بعد لحظة.
change his mind	يغير رأيه

Words and definitions

كلمات وتعريفها

tablet

تابلت / جهاز لوحي

A small flat computer you can hold in your hands, like an iPad.

جهاز كمبيوتر صغير مسطح يمكنك حمله بين يديك، مثل جهاز iPad.

Wi-Fi

واي فاي

wireless internet connection.

اتصال لاسلكي بالإنترنت.

level

مستوى

a stage in a game or activity where you must complete tasks to move forward.

مرحلة في لعبة أو نشاط حيث يجب عليك إكمال المهام للمضي قدماً.

excited

متحمس

very happy and full of energy.

سعيد جداً ومليء بالطاقة.

bored

مضجر / يشعر بالملل

not interested or having nothing to do.

غير مهتم أو ليس لديك ما تفعله.

lonely

وحيد

feeling sad because you are alone.

الشعور بالحزن لأنك وحيد.

rode

ركب

to sit and move on a bike.

أن تجلس وتتحرك على دراجة.

called out

صاح

to shout so someone can hear you.

أن تصرخ حتى يسمعك أحدهم.

whispered

همس

to speak very softly.

التحدث بصوت منخفض جداً.

breeze

نسيم

a light, gentle wind.

ريح خفيفة، لطيفة.

sidewalk

رصيف

the path beside a road where people walk.

الممر بجانب طريق حيث يسير الناس.

chalk

طباشير

a soft white or colored stick used for writing or drawing.

عود أبيض ناعم أو ملون يُستخدم للكتابة أو الرسم.



It was a beautiful Friday morning. The sky was clear and blue, and the birds were singing in the trees. Tarek jumped out of bed, grabbed his tablet, and smiled. "Today I'll reach level 20!" he said proudly. He pressed the power button. The game started, but when he tried to play, a message popped up: "No Internet Connection!" Tarek frowned and tried again. Still nothing. "Mom! The Wi-Fi isn't working!" he called out. His mother walked in with a smile. "The Internet is down today. Maybe you can find something fun to do outside." Tarek sighed. "Fun? Without Wi-Fi? Impossible!"

كان صباح يوم جمعة جميلاً. كانت السماء صافية وزرقاء، والطيور تغرد بين الأشجار. قفز طارق من سريره، وأمسك بجهازه اللوحي، وابتسم. قال بفخر: "اليوم سأصل إلى المستوى ٢٠!" ضغط زر التشغيل. بدأت اللعبة، ولكن عندما حاول اللعب، ظهرت رسالة: "لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت!" عبس طارق وحاول مرة أخرى. لا جديد. صاح قائلاً: "أمي! شبكة الواي فاي لا تعمل!" دخلت والدته مبتسمة. "الإنترنت معطل اليوم. ربما تجد شيئاً ممتعاً لتفعله في الخارج." تنهد طارق. "ممتع؟ بدون واي فاي؟ مستحيل!"



He sat on his bed, looking at his silent tablet. The room felt empty and quiet. He tried watching old videos, but they weren't interesting anymore. Out the window, he saw Laila, Amir, and Dina laughing and running around with their bikes. Laila called: "Hey, Tarek! Come outside! We're going to the park!" Tarek shook his head. "No thanks! I'm... uh... busy!" But after a while, he started feeling lonely. He missed laughing and talking with his friends. The tablet was just a silent screen now. He looked at it again and said softly, "Maybe I'll just go for a few minutes."

جلس على سريره، ينظر إلى جهازه اللوحي الصامت. بدت الغرفة خالية وهادئة. حاول مشاهدة مقاطع فيديو قديمة، لكنها لم تعد تثير اهتمامه. خارج النافذة، رأى ليلي وأمير ودينا يضحكون ويركضون بدراجاتهم. نادى ليلي: "يا طارق! تعال إلى الخارج! سنذهب إلى الحديقة!" هز طارق رأسه رافضاً "لا شكرًا! أنا... مشغول!" لكن بعد قليل، بدأ يشعر بالوحدة. اشتاق للضحك والحديث مع أصدقائه. أصبح الجهاز اللوحي مجرد شاشة صامتة الآن. نظر إليه مجددًا وقال بهدوء: "ربما سأذهب لبضع دقائق فقط."

When he stepped outside, the warm sunshine touched his face, and a cool breeze blew through his hair. Laila smiled and waved. "You came! We're drawing on the sidewalk. Want to help?" She handed him a piece of colorful chalk. Together, they drew a giant smiling sun, a tall castle, and even a rocket ship. Then Amir shouted, "Let's race to the park!" They rode their bikes, laughing the whole way. At the park, they played hide-and-seek, and built a pretend shop with leaves and sticks. Tarek laughed so much his stomach hurt. "I forgot how much fun this is!" he said happily.

عندما خرج، لامست أشعة الشمس الدافئة وجهه، وهبت نسمة باردة خلال شعره. ابتسمت ليلي ولوّحت بيدها. "لقد أتيت! نحن نرسم على الرصيف. هل تريد المساعدة؟" ناولته قطعة من طباشيرة ملونة. رسما معًا شمسًا عملاقة مبتسمة، وقلعة شاهقة، وحتى صاروخًا. ثم صاح أمير: "هيا بنا نتسابق إلى الحديقة!" ركبوا دراجاتهم، يضحكون طوال الطريق. في الحديقة، لعبوا الغميضة، وبنوا متجرًا وهميًا من أوراق الشجر والعصى. ضحك طارق كثيرًا حتى آلمته بطنه. قال بسعادة: "لقد نسيت كم هذا ممتع!"



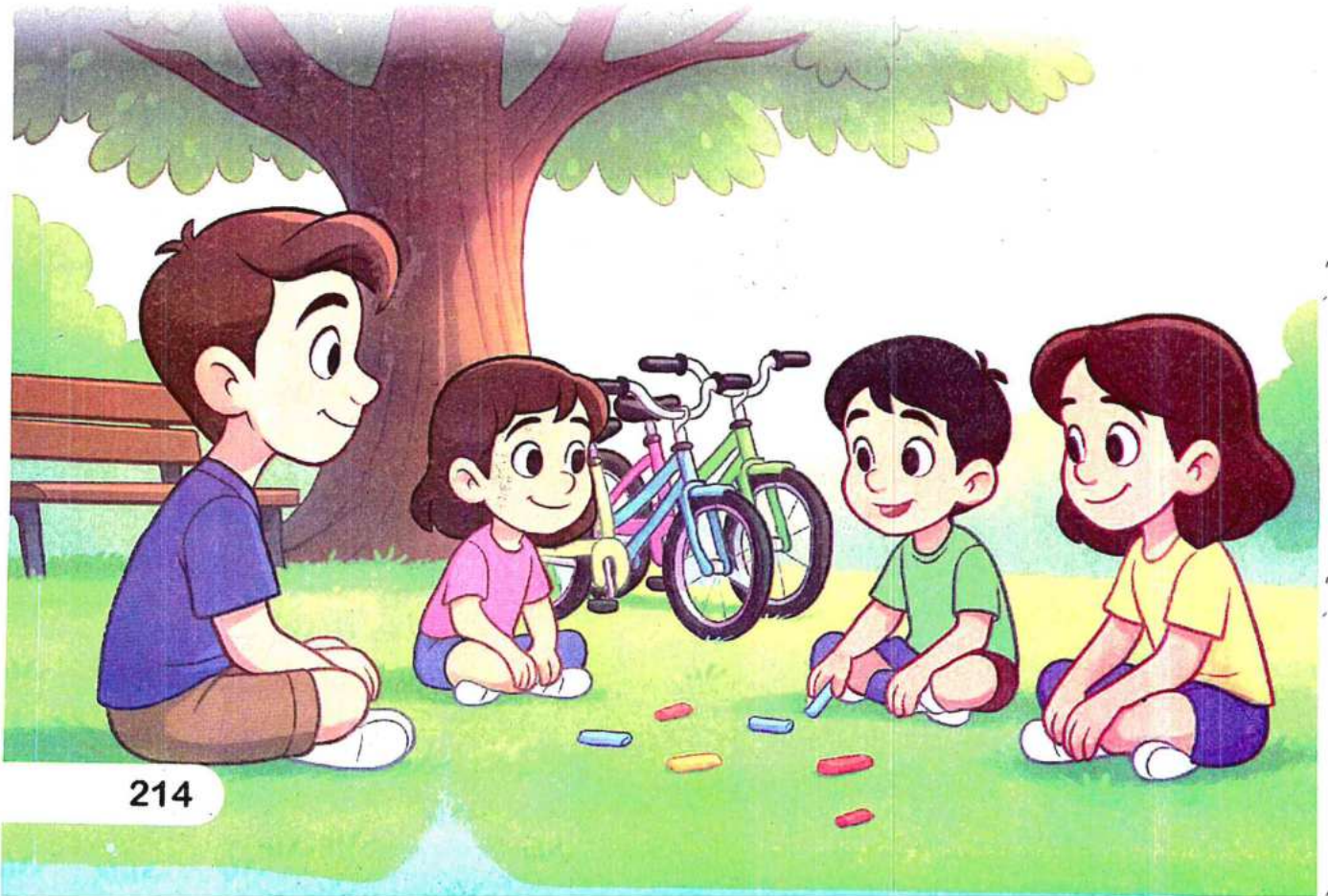
Later that afternoon, Tarek's mom called from the house, "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!" He stopped and looked at his friends. They were all covered in chalk dust and smiling from ear to ear. He thought for a second. Should he run back inside and play his game? Then Dina said, "Come on, Tarek! One more round of hide-and-seek!" Tarek smiled. "The Wi-Fi can wait!" And off he ran, laughing louder than ever.

في وقت لاحق من بعد الظهر، نادى والدۀ طارق من المنزل قائلة: "طارق! لقد عاد الإنترنت!" توقف طارق ونظر إلى أصدقائه. كانوا جميعًا مغطيين بغبار الطباشير، ويبتسمون (ابتسامة عريضة) فكر للحظة. هل يعود مسرعًا إلى الداخل ليلعب لعبته؟ ثم قالت دينا: "هيا يا طارق! جولة أخرى من الغميضة!" ابتسم طارق. "يمكن للإنترنت أن ينتظر!" وانطلق يركض، ضاحكًا بصوت أعلى من أي وقت مضى.



At sunset, the four friends sat under the big tree, watching the sky turn orange and pink. Laila said, "This was the best day ever." Tarek smiled and nodded. "You know what? I didn't even miss my tablet. I think real life is more fun." When he went to bed that night, he placed his tablet on the shelf and whispered, "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun." From that day on, Tarek still used his tablet-but only at the minimal use after he spent time with his friends. Because he learned something important: No tablet, phone, or screen can ever replace the joy of friendship.

عند غروب الشمس، جلس الأصدقاء الأربعة تحت شجرة كبيرة. يراقبون السماء وهي تتحول إلى اللون البرتقالي والوردي. قالت ليلي: "كان هذا أفضل يوم على الإطلاق." ابتسم طارق وأوماً برأسه. "أتعلمين؟ لم أفقد جهازي اللوحي أبداً. أعتقد أن الحياة الواقعية أكثر متعة." عندما ذهب إلى فراشه تلك الليلة، وضع جهازه اللوحي على الرف وهمس: "أنت ممتع، لكن أصدقائي أكثر متعة." منذ ذلك اليوم، ظل طارق يستخدم جهازه اللوحي، ولكن باعتدال شديد بعد أن يقضي وقتاً مع أصدقائه. لأنه تعلم شيئاً مهماً: لا يمكن لأي جهاز لوحي أو هاتف أو شاشة أن تحل محل متعة الصداقة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What happened at the beginning of the story?
 - a) Tarek's friends came to visit him.
 - b) Tarek's Wi-Fi stopped working.
 - c) Tarek went to the park.
 - d) Tarek lost his tablet.
2. Why did Tarek feel bored?
 - a) His friends didn't want to play with him.
 - b) The Wi-Fi was not working, so he couldn't play online.
 - c) His tablet was broken.
 - d) He had too much homework.
3. What did Tarek and his friends do outside?
 - a) Played video games.
 - b) Watched a movie.
 - c) Built a sandcastle.
 - d) Drew pictures with chalk and rode their bikes.
4. When the Wi-Fi came back, what did Tarek decide to do?
 - a) Go back home and play his game.
 - b) Keep playing with his friends.
 - c) Watch TV
 - d) Tell his mom to turn it off again
5. What lesson did Tarek learn at the end?
 - a) Wi-Fi is more important than school
 - b) Friends are more fun than screens
 - c) Drawing is boring
 - d) He should buy a new tablet

2 Write the numbers 1-5 to show the correct order of the events.

- ☐ Tarek's mom told him that the Wi-Fi wasn't working.
- ☐ Tarek went outside and had fun playing with his friends.
- ☐ Tarek woke up excited to play on his tablet.
- ☐ Tarek's mom said the Wi-Fi was back, but he chose to stay and play.
- ☐ At night, Tarek realized that friends are more fun than screens.

3 Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

1. Tarek was excited to play his favorite game on his tablet in the morning. ()
2. The Wi-Fi stopped working in Tarek's house. ()
3. Tarek and his friends had fun drawing with chalk and riding their bikes. ()
4. When the Wi-Fi came back, Tarek ran home immediately to play online. ()
5. At the end, Tarek decided that screens are more fun than friends. ()

4 Match the word with its definition.

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--|
| 1. rode | ☐ | a. not interested or having nothing to do. |
| 2. Whispered | ☐ | b. to shout so someone can hear you. |
| 3. bored | ☐ | c. to speak very softly. |
| 4. sidewalk | ☐ | d. to sit and move on a bike. |
| 5. called out | ☐ | e. the path beside a road where people walk. |

5 Read and complete the text using the words in the box.

(friends - tablet - Wi-Fi - bored - outside - fun - lesson)

Tarek was very excited to play on his (1)..... . On Friday morning, he grabbed his tablet, but the (2)..... stopped working. At first, he felt (3)..... and didn't know what to do. Then he looked out the window and saw his (4)..... playing (5)..... . He decided to join them, and together they laughed and had so much (6)..... . At the end of the day, Tarek learned an important (7)..... that real friendship is better than any screen.

Monthly tests on units 1,2

Test 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- When my sister practiced a hobby, she learned more
a) cycling b) skills c) food d) drinks
- 2- The doctor asked me to and have the medicine.
a) play b) sing c) draw d) rest
- 3- I could the puzzles easily. It's my hobby.
a) solve b) solved c) solves d) solving
- 4- They to relax at home. They are too tired.
a) must b) have c) has d) mustn't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(teamwork - hobby - board - reading - painting)

I'm Ahmed. I have two brothers. Everyone has a (1)..... to practice. I like (2)..... . I like to choose light colors. It's very interesting. My brother Ahmed likes to play (3)..... games. He learns (4)..... and problem-solving. My brother Hani loves cycling and skating in the park. We practice our hobbies in our free time with our friends.

3 Punctuate the following.

i have a headache and a cough

.....

who do you go to school with

.....

Test 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I like playing the piano. It makes me feel
a) sad b) scared c) sick d) relaxed
- 2- I have a because I ate bad food at the streets.
a) stomachache b) sore throat c) cough d) headache
- 3- My sister build a sandcastle. People were amazed.
a) can b) could c) mustn't d) couldn't
- 4- My uncle to visit us next Friday. We have a party.
a) have b) has c) must d) mustn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- You (must) speak loudly at the library.
- 2- I don't (must) buy a jacket. I have 3 jackets.
- 3- He could (solves) puzzles when he was younger.
- 4- What can your sister (doing) on the beach?

3 Punctuate the following.

last Monday, we visited our grandparents

do you like board games or skating

Test 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My brother is a student. He could answer all the questions.
a) singer b) teacher c) talented d) lazy
- 2- After the doctor gave me medicine, I went to the to buy it.
a) fever b) pharmacy c) garden d) library
- 3- You to take medicine. You are very sick.
a) must b) mustn't c) have d) don't have
- 4- I play the piano now, but last year, I couldn't.
a) am b) is c) are d) can

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(rest - leave - medicine - return - play)

Last Saturday, I was very sick : I asked my teacher for a sick (1)..... request. I wanted to (2)..... for 3 days at home. He was very kind. I told him that I will (3)..... on Tuesday. I went to the clinic in the evening and got (4)..... I hope to feel better soon.

3 Punctuate the following.

they don't like to play the piano

.....

how could you build a sandcastle

.....

Test 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Samy has a small garden. He for the plants every day.
a) cuts b) eats c) cares d) runs
- 2- We spent the afternoon crafting with to make colorful decoration.
a) paper b) cars c) doctor d) nurse
- 3- She swim, but she couldn't play the piano.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 4- You have early. You have a test tomorrow.
a) sleep b) sleeps c) to sleep d) sleeping

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- My brother (can) play the guitar when he was ten.
- 2- My father must (takes) medicine and sleep.
- 3- We (isn't) have to buy tickets. It's free.
- 4- I couldn't swim when I was five, but now, I (could).

3 Punctuate the following.

where can you ride a bike

.....

they have to follow rules

.....

Test 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I could join pieces together. I could solve
 a) cycle b) puzzles c) paints d) songs
- 2- The nurse asked me to come to the room.
 a) sleeping b) examination c) drawing d) playing
- 3- You must to school on time.
 a) comes b) come c) coming d) came
- 4- My father won the game. He run fast.
 a) can b) can't c) could d) mustn't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(colors - choose - drawing - chooses - matches)

You should practice a hobby. First, you should take a moment to
 (1) a hobby you love. Choose a hobby that (2) your
 interests like drawing, reading, or playing the piano. Next, get the
 things you need. If you choose (3), you need to have paper
 and (4) After that, practice your hobby step by step.

3 Punctuate the following.

what are you watching on TV

.....

My uncle is traveling to aswan now

.....

Monthly tests on units 3,4

Test 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I packed my swimming to enjoy the sea.
a) book b) suit c) car d) beach
- 2- dogs help blind people move around safely.
a) Police b) Guide c) Guard d) Horses
- 3- How you go to school, Ahmed?
a) do b) does c) doing d) are
- 4- We going to wear our sunglasses on the beach.
a) don't b) are c) is d) can't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- She isn't (go) to swim today.
- 2- They always (got) up early. They are very active.
- 3- I (does) going to feed the animals now.
- 4- Listen! My brothers (sing) a nice song.

3 Punctuate the following.

is your father working on the farm now

.....

Falcons don t hunt at night

.....

Test 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- The bus was very , so we couldn't ride bikes.

- a) empty b) slow c) crowded d) clean

2- Each animal has a special in our life.

- a) leg b) farm c) dog d) job

3- She usually pictures in her free time.

- a) draw b) draws c) drawing d) drew

4- My friend is to stay in a hotel by the beach.

- a) going b) go c) goes d) went

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(beach - double - suitcases - single - light)

I like traveling. I always pack my (1) the night before traveling.

If it is hot, I pack my (2) clothes and my sunglasses. I

always (3) - check my suitcases. I sleep early to enjoy the

road. I like going to the (4) and swimming in the sea. My

favorite place is Alexandria.

3 Punctuate the following.

tourists like to visit the pyramids of Giza.

.....

when do you usually get up

.....

Test 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- We sang together to enjoy our time.
a) books b) drawing c) songs d) piano
- 2- Police dogs help find lost people.
a) doctors b) teachers c) blind d) officers
- 3- He drives his car very
a) careful b) carefully c) lazy d) bad
- 4- The donkey is a heavy load at the moment.
a) carry b) carrying c) carries d) carried

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1- They usually (sleeps) in tents in the desert.
- 2- We are going (helps) our father tomorrow.
- 3- Where are they (watch) the match right now?
- 4- I (doesn't) have a hobby. I need to practice a hobby.

3 Punctuate the following.

are they going to travel to Cairo

does a gecko eat insects

Test 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- We took a on the Nile River to Aswan.

- a) bus b) train c) boat d) car

2- Rescue help people in water and save them.

- a) horses b) dolphins c) dogs d) cows

3- What is your sister to draw tomorrow?

- a) go b) went c) goes d) going

4- The water buffalo doesn't in the city.

- a) worked b) works c) working d) work

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(animals – beetles – milk – drinks – loads)

Visiting farms is very interesting. You can enjoy seeing (1)..... in the fields. Every animal has a job. Many farmers (2)..... cows in the morning. The donkey carries heavy (3)..... to the market. The scarab (4)..... help the soil grow plants. Farm animals are hard workers who help people in many ways.

3 Punctuate the following.

Look! the pigeon is flying with a message

.....

what are you going to pack

.....

Test 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- I took my because it's going to be sunny.

- a) dog b) warm clothes c) sunglasses d) ball

2- The dog is brave and smart. It can catch criminals.

- a) guide b) guard c) police d) lazy

3- My sister is going a hobby next week.

- a) practice b) practices c) practiced d) to practice

4- We our homework right now.

- a) do b) does c) doing d) are doing

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1- She (aren't) going to travel tomorrow. She is sick.

2- We (read) a nice story now.

3- Where are you (go) to sleep?

4- She (don't) like drawing. She likes cycling.

3 Punctuate the following.

she doesn't like reading stories.

.....

are you going to take your camera

.....

Test 1

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Sandy's favorite subject is science. ()
- 2- She likes studying planets and stars. ()
- 3- The teacher asked them to make posters last Monday. ()
- 4- The teacher was very happy. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The is a fast bird that hunts animals in fields.
a) gecko b) pigeon c) falcon d) donkey
- 2- We can buy medicine at the
a) campsite b) crafting c) pharmacy d) drawing
- 3- She usually to school with her friend.
a) walk b) walks c) walking d) walked
- 4- You don't ask for help, I'll help you.
a) must b) mustn't c) have d) have to

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(healthy – tired – activities – board – cycling)

Hobbies are (1) we do in our free time. Hobbies are very important. When you play (2) games, you learn teamwork and problem-solving. When you go (3), you stay strong and (4) You should have a hobby to learn and have more skills in your life, but it should match your interests.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

Animal helpers work hard to help people in fields and at home. Water buffaloes prepare the soil for planting crops. They are very important for the farmers. Scarab beetles also help farmers. They work in the soil. They help make the soil better by breaking down waste. These animals play an important role in fields. They help us get healthy food. So farmers should take care of them by giving them good food and a clean place to live. Donkeys can also carry heavy loads in fields and to the market. There are also useful birds like falcons and pigeons.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) farmers b) buffaloes c) scarab beetles d) people
- 2- Water buffaloes help prepare the for planting crops.
a) cows b) donkeys c) food d) soil

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What should farmers do for animals?
.....
- 4- How can donkeys help farmers?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- She (can) play the piano when she was nine.
- 2- You (must) to study hard.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- by - 'll - piano - I - perform - playing - the .
.....
- 2- fever - I - a - have - and - throat - sore - a .
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

the boy drew a nice picture at school

what are you going to play

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your favorite hobby"
(free time - helps - share)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Dolphins live in the desert. ()
- 2- The dolphins rescue people in danger. ()
- 3- He likes reading stories about dolphins. ()
- 4- Dolphins are very important sea animals. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- She wants to the puzzles to win the game.
a) break b) send c) solve d) cycle
- 2- My father bought the We are going to go to the cinema.
a) books b) tickets c) bikes d) cars
- 3- She is travel to Luxor next winter.
a) go to b) goes to c) going to d) going
- 4- My sister a nice picture now.
a) draw b) draws c) is drawing d) drawing

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(Farmers – nurse's – clean – accidents – medicine)

There is a first aid kit in our (1) room. We use it for small (2) It has bandages, plasters, and (3) for cuts and bruises. You should ask for permission before using it. Nurses should make sure it is (4) When my friend hurt himself at school, we went to the nurse, and she helped him. She cleaned the cut and put a bandage on it.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ahmed. The last campsite we had was very amazing. We enjoyed our trip very much. First, we packed our suitcases very well. We took sunglasses and light outfits because it's very hot in the desert. We took our bus at 7 a.m. We arrived at 11:30 a.m. We set up our tents. Then, we hiked on a nature trail to enjoy watching birds. They are colorful. My friend Mohammed took a lot of photos of birds. At night, we enjoyed sitting around the campfire. My brother Ali liked watching stars at night. It was a great day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) Ahmed and Mohammed b) birds
c) clothes d) campfire
- 2- They went to the campsite by
a) car b) bus c) foot d) camel

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the text about?
.....
- 4- When did they arrive at the campsite?
.....
- 5- Why did they take light outfits and sunglasses?
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- He (are) going to sing a song.
- 2- We usually (watching) TV at night.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- clothes - to - my - I - summer - put - in - need .
.....
- 2- Luxor - What - visit - you - in - going - are - to ?
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

my friend likes to visit luxor.

where can you play board games

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"First aid kit"

(clean - nurse's room - cuts)

Test 3

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1- A white egret has sharp beaks. | () |
| 2- It uses its beak to eat insects. | () |
| 3- Hoppers can catch white egrets in fields. | () |
| 4- A white egret has long legs to walk through water. | () |

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I feel a little I need to see a doctor.
 a) strong b) happy c) big d) weak
- 2- My uncle is blind, so he has a for help.
 a) guide dog b) cow c) dolphin d) buffaloes
- 3- Mars is than Earth.
 a) dry b) drier c) driest d) coldest
- 4- She swim fast when she was six.
 a) can b) can't c) could d) is

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(sandcastles – reading – swimming – going – beaches)

Tomorrow, we are (1) to travel to Alexandria. It's a great city by the sea. It has wonderful (2) where you can swim. You can build (3) by the beach. You can also enjoy (4) in the sea. It's very amazing. Alexandria has good weather to enjoy. It's going to be a nice holiday. We will go by car in the morning.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Berry. When I grow up, I want to be an astronaut. I like to study the planets. They are very amazing. We live on the Earth. It's very suitable to live in. There are many planets in our solar system. Jupiter is the largest planet in the galaxy. The galaxy is bigger than we imagine. My favorite subject is science because it helps me learn about space. It is also very interesting to study. I have two lessons a week at school. My father always helps me learn new ideas, and he encourages me to be creative. My mother also helps me do my homework.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "suitable" means
a) bad b) good c) hard d) dangerous
- 2- Berry's favorite subject is
a) math b) English c) science d) Arabic

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does Berry want to be?
.....
- 4- How does Berry's father help her?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- My sister is (good) than her friend.
- 2- She (can) draw, but she can swim.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- sunscreen - your suitcase - Don't - to - forget - put - in .
.....
- 2- do - What - school - you - must - at - your ?
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

he is singing a song at school

why do tourists like to visit Aswan

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"School camping trip"
(campfire - tent - nature trail)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Dr. Waleed is going to travel to his home country. ()
- 2- Dr. Waleed is going to spend one-week vacation. ()
- 3- He is going to see the Pyramids of Giza. ()
- 4- He is going to take the train to Aswan. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Mars is called the because of its iron-rich soil.
a) Red Planet b) Pyramid c) Temple d) Universe
- 2- The strong water buffaloes pull through the fields.
a) carts b) carpets c) ploughs d) farms
- 3- Jupiter is the planet in the solar system.
a) large b) larger c) largest d) far
- 4- You follow rules at the school library.
a) must b) mustn't c) have d) don't have

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(danger – dolphins – Rescue – scared – safe)

Horses and (1) are amazing animals. They help us in our lives. Horses help people relax when they are sad or (2)
(3) dolphins help people when they are in (4)
in the sea. When I visit Hurghada, I will enjoy seeing the dolphin show. It's interesting. My brother likes riding a horse on weekends. It helps him relax and stay healthy.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Maya. Last summer was very fantastic. We enjoyed our summer vacation. First, we packed our suitcases. We put in our summer clothes, swimming suit, and my camera. We enjoyed swimming in the sea and playing on the beach in the morning. My brother built a big sandcastle on the beach. We went to Qaitbay Citadel at night. It is a great building. We took a lot of photos there. We met our friends there. We had lunch together at a big restaurant. We stayed in Alexandria for 5 days. My mother likes reading, so we went to Bibliotheca Alexandrina. We saw many kinds of old books there.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "there" refers to
a) library b) Qaitbay Citadel c) beach d) sea
- 2- Maya took with her on the vacation.
a) toys b) jackets c) swimming suit d) sand

B) Answer the following questions.

3- What did Maya's brother do on the beach?

4- Where did they have lunch?

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- She (eat) fish with her family now.
- 2- I (can) ride a bike when I was six years old.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- relax - important - Hobbies - help us - are - because - they .
- 2- nurse's - kit - room - a big - in the - There's - aid - first .

7- Punctuate the following.

i play football with my friend on friday

why do you think hobbies are important

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Farm animals"

(cows - sheep - help)

Test 5

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Ahmed wants to visit Hospital 57-3-57. ()
- 2- He wants to help children at the hospital. ()
- 3- Ahmed wants to be a doctor when he grows up. ()
- 4- Ahmed's mother is a nurse. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- Tourists like to the amazing temples of Karnak.
a) take b) send c) explore d) eat
- 2- My father likes writing The last one was interesting.
a) skating b) stories c) classes d) hobbies
- 3- She draw very well. I like her pictures.
a) can't b) can c) is d) do
- 4- He must water every day.
a) drinks b) drinking c) drank d) drink

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(interesting – hobby – relaxing – piano – free)

My favorite (1) is drawing and playing the
(2) I like drawing because it's fun and interesting.
I also like playing the piano in my (3) time. It's very
(4) My brother likes horses. He rides his white horse
in the morning. He enjoys it very much.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

Animals are very important creatures. They have important jobs. They help us in our work and in our lives. The police dogs help the officers catch criminals. They are brave and smart. The guide dog helps blind people to move around safely. The guard dog also has an important job. It helps the farmers take care of the sheep. It moves around them to keep them safe. We should take care of these dogs and give them good food because they are very important in our lives.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "smart" means
a) bad b) lazy c) clever d) slow
- 2- The dogs can help blind people.
a) guard b) police c) guide d) dolphin

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the main idea of the text?
.....
- 4- How can the guard dog help farmers?
.....
- 5- List two dogs mentioned in the text.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- I could (reading) stories when I was nine.
- 2- You (must) drink unhealthy drinks.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- to - country - my - going - I - to - travel - am .
.....
- 2- do - kind - jobs - do - of - they - What ?
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

there's a first aid kit at our school

how does your brother help you at home

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Hobby club"

(students - painting - reading)

Test 6

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Hobbies aren't important for us. ()
- 2- Board games help us learn teamwork. ()
- 3- Singing songs and playing the piano help us learn patience. ()
- 4- Cycling and skating help us stay strong. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My brother is very He drew a nice picture.
a) sorry b) sad c) talented d) lazy
- 2- When you have cuts and , use the first aid kit.
a) bruises b) nurse c) doctor d) books
- 3- Where does your uncle , Ali?
a) work b) works c) working d) worked
- 4- She play the game. She is very sick.
a) can b) can't c) could d) is

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(warm – clinic – school – cough – doctor)

I was very sick yesterday. I had a sore throat and a (1)
My father asked me to see a (2) When I arrived at the
(3), he examined me and gave me medicine. He was very
kind and clever. He advised me to drink (4) liquids. Today,
I feel very well. We should thank our doctors and respect them.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Adam. Everyone has a favorite hobby. I like traveling very much. I like seeing new places and enjoy my time visiting ancient cities. My brother also likes studying the history of ancient Egyptians. Last holiday, we traveled to Luxor and Aswan. We went in January. We saw temples and many places in Luxor. We took a lot of photos at Karnak Temple. We took a boat to Aswan. We enjoyed the Nile. My father told us that Egypt has great places. So everyone should practice a hobby because hobbies help us relax, be creative, and get more skills in our lives.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The opposite of the word "ancient" is
a) old b) modern c) good d) hard
- 2- Adam's favorite hobby is
a) reading b) drawing c) traveling d) swimming

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the text about?
.....
- 4- Where did Adam go last holiday?
.....
- 5- How can hobbies help us?
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- We (**doesn't**) have to sleep early.
- 2- Stories are (**most**) interesting than books.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- am - uncle's - today - I - my - farm - visiting .
.....
- 2- is - favorite - What - planet - your ?
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

When does your family usually travel
Tourists like to visit the pyramids of Giza

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Sick Leave Request"

(**ill - a week - come back**)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 7

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Jupiter is the smallest planet. ()
- 2- Mercury and Venus are big planets. ()
- 3- You can see amazing stars and planets in the solar system. ()
- 4- Our galaxy is called the Milky Way. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The is an insect that helps make soil better for plants.
a) gecko b) scarab beetle c) falcon d) donkey
- 2- My father is a / an He studies the solar system.
a) astronaut b) farmer c) doctor d) nurse
- 3- The rose is beautiful than the cactus.
a) most b) least c) more d) many
- 4- Look! The baby with the puzzles.
a) play b) plays c) is playing d) playing

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(campsite – campfire – hotels – tents – crowded)

Last Friday, we went to the (1) It was very amazing. We enjoyed our time there. We stayed at (2) In the desert. The campsite was very (3), but we had a nice time. We sat around a (4) at night and had a delicious dinner under the moon and stars. We came back home at 3:00 a.m.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Farida. I was searching the Internet yesterday at night. I read about animals. They are very important in our lives. I read about dolphins and horses. They are very useful for us. Rescue dolphins help people in danger at sea. Horses also have a good job. They help people who feel sad and scared to feel calm and relaxed. Riding horses is one of my favorite hobbies. So when I visit my uncle on his farm. I enjoy riding the horses very much. Horses also help farmers pull the carts and carry loads to the market.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1- The word "Rescue" means they can people.

- a) hurt b) leave c) save d) swim

2- can help people feel relaxed.

- a) Dolphins b) Dogs c) Cats d) Horses

B) Answer the following questions.

3- What is the text about?

4- What job can dolphins do?

5- What is Farida's favorite hobby?

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1- Look! The boy (cycle) to school.

2- He is (go) to visit ancient sites next Friday.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- day - us - Cows - milk - every - fresh - give .

2- learn - end - did - the - at - Nada - What ?

7- Punctuate the following.

What is the family going to do in alexandria
many animals work hard to help people

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Special trip home"
(vacation - train - temples)

Test 8

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Berry likes horses and dogs. ()
- 2- Dogs can help people feel better. ()
- 3- Horses help blind people move safely. ()
- 4- Horses and dogs aren't important animals. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My father packed his He is going to travel.
a) car b) bus c) suitcase d) plane
- 2- A is a hardworking animal that carries heavy loads.
a) pigeon b) donkey c) lizard d) falcon
- 3- She is going early tomorrow.
a) sleep b) sleeps c) to sleep d) sleeping
- 4- My parents always up early. They're doctors.
a) get b) gets c) got d) getting

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(hobbies – eating – skating – fun – skills)

In the past, children could spend more time outside running,

(1), or fishing. Today, you can choose from many
(2) I have a hobby that helps me learn more (3)
for life. Hobbies are not only (4), but they also make
us smarter, stronger, and healthier. They also show how people
grow. You should have a hobby that you like.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Rami. Our school organized a school trip for two days to the desert. My brother and I bought the tickets. We are going to stay in a campsite. We are going to watch and enjoy nature in the morning. We are going to walk on a nature trail. My brother likes photos. So he is going to take a lot of photos. At night, we are going to sit around a campfire to enjoy seeing stars and singing. It will be fun. At the campsite, people sleep in tents because there are no hotels in the desert.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "he" refers to
a) Rami b) brother c) father d) campsite
- 2- They are going to enjoy nature in the
a) evening b) night c) morning d) afternoon

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What are they going to do at night?
.....
- 4- Why do they sleep in tents in the desert?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- He can't (sings) songs very well.
- 2- My friend often (draw) pictures at home.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- makes - easier - better - and - the job - Working - together .
.....
- 2- legs - beak - The - has - long - egret - and - a sharp .
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

Scientists like exploring mars
how can we save our planet

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Farm animals"

(water buffaloes - cows - guard dogs)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 9

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Aya likes reading about birds. ()
- 2- Pigeons are messenger birds. ()
- 3- Falcons can carry messages to different places. ()
- 4- Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My brother needs clothes. It is going to be cold.
a) light b) warm c) big d) fast
- 2- The help children get the care they need at the hospital.
a) traffic b) donations c) planet d) books
- 3- You have your uniform at work.
a) wear b) wears c) wearing d) to wear
- 4- The giraffe is animal in the zoo.
a) taller b) tallest c) the tallest d) shortest

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(playrooms – Hospital – children – worse – healthier)

(1) 57-3-57 is one of the biggest and most important hospitals for (2) in Egypt. It has an important role to help our children live a (3) and better life. It has (4) and libraries for them to enjoy their time while they are waiting for treatment. We should thank the doctors and nurses at this hospital.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Asser. My father is a farmer. We have a good farm. We also have a lot of animals that help us on the farm. I always help my father feed them and give them water. My mother milks our cow in the morning to get fresh milk. We use its milk to make cheese and butter. We also have a donkey. It helps us take goods to the market to sell them and get money. Donkeys are amazing animals. They know their routes very well and never get lost. My father gives them good care because they are very useful.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "its" refers to
a) donkey b) cow c) dog d) farm
- 2- Donkeys can know their very well.
a) school b) cow c) route d) crops

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- How can donkeys help farmers?
.....
- 4- How can Asser's mother help on the farm?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- The lion is the (strong) animal in the forest.
- 2- We are going (helps) our mother.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- Wadi El Gemal - Our class - Park - travel to - going to - is .
.....
- 2- hands - must - before - Students - lunch - their - wash .
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

saturn is famous for its rings

what is your brother doing at the park

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"A trip in a spaceship"
(landed - alien - spaceship)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 10

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Each school mustn't have a big first aid kit. ()
- 2- The first aid kit has scissors, plasters, and medicine. ()
- 3- Nurses have to check that the first aid kit is clean. ()
- 4- You must get permission before opening the first aid kit. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The help officers find lost people.
a) horses b) guide dogs c) dolphins d) police dogs
- 2- is the largest planet in the solar system.
a) Earth b) Jupiter c) Mars d) Karnak
- 3- She cycle when she was two.
a) could b) couldn't c) can d) can't
- 4- My cousins football in the garden right now.
a) play b) plays c) are playing d) is playing

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(routes – cheese – meat – Cows – loads)

Animals on the farm have very important roles. (1) give us fresh milk that we use to make (2) Donkeys carry heavy (3) to the market. They are very strong and amazing animals. They know their (4) very well, so they can go to the field and the barn alone.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians were very great. Our ancient Egyptian kings were very powerful. They made the culture and the history of Egypt. They were very creative. They built temples and the Pyramids of Giza. They made a lot of amazing paintings on the temples' walls. One of the great Egyptian kings was Ramses II. My father is a tourist guide. He sometimes takes us with him to see the great works of the ancient Egyptians and enjoy our history. We took a lot of photos on our last visit. Then, we had lunch with some tourists at a nice restaurant. We are proud of our ancient Egyptian kings.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to
a) Ramses b) father c) brother d) king
- 2- Ancient Egyptian kings were very
a) lazy b) selfish c) powerful d) funny

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is the text about?
.....
- 4- What did Ancient Egyptians build in Giza?
.....
- 5- Where did they have lunch?
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- What is he (do) at home now?
- 2- She (doesn't) going to read a new book.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- the hospitals - money - in Egypt - donate - people - Many - to .
.....
- 2- dogs - job - Do - have - a - guide ?
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

who is your favorite singer, ahmed?

we usually help our uncle on the farm

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your vacation"

(Luxor - temples - cruise)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 11

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Sara Sabry is the first female teacher. ()
- 2- Sara Sabry studied the solar system and planets. ()
- 3- Earth is bigger than Mercury. ()
- 4- Earth is colder than Venus. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My brother likes He goes to school by bicycle.
a) drawing b) cycling c) crafting d) singing
- 2- The is a sandy place near the sea.
a) ticket b) beach c) suitcase d) temple
- 3- Neptune is the distant planet from the sun.
a) more b) many c) most d) less
- 4- We to make a poster next week.
a) going b) go c) are going d) goes

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(guide – jobs – police – criminals – brave)

My father is a police officer. He likes his job very much. He has a (1) dog to help. It is smart and (2) It helps my father find lost people and catch (3) The dog is very active and ready to help on the spot. Guide dogs also help blind people move around safely. It's calm and careful. Dogs have important (4) in our lives.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Merna. My favorite hobby is painting. I love painting because it is fun and relaxing. I like using different colors to draw pictures of nature and animals. When I paint, I feel happy and calm. Painting helps me express my feelings and improve my creativity. I enjoy painting in my free time at home. Painting is a wonderful hobby. My friend Sandy likes playing board games and solving puzzles. She learns teamwork and problem-solving. Each one should have a hobby that matches what they like.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The opposite of the underlined pronoun "fun" is
a) calm b) relaxed c) boring d) happy
- 2- She likes using different colors to pictures.
a) draw b) play c) eat d) run

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does Sandy like to do?
.....
- 4- How does she feel when she paints?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- We could (rides) bikes when we were seven.
- 2- This mark in math is (bad) than your mark in Arabic.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- the sky - I - in - can - the Moon - the Sun - see - and .
.....
- 2- quickly - finish - people - puzzles - can - Some .
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

He s cycling to school by bicycle
what is the largest planet

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"The clinic"

(clean - doctors - nurses)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 12

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Water buffaloes pull ploughs through fields. ()
- 2- Donkeys carry heavy loads to the markets. ()
- 3- Donkeys know their routes well. ()
- 4- Donkeys and dolphins are animals on the farm. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- You have a cough. You need to drink liquids.
a) spicy b) cold c) warm d) hot
- 2- We sat around a when we were in the campsite.
a) school b) hotel c) tent d) campfire
- 3- Mars is the interesting planet we explored.
a) more b) many c) most d) much
- 4- We could songs when we were five.
a) sang b) sing c) sings d) singing

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(club – basketball – practice – hospital – playground)

At my school, there is a school hobby (1) We learn more skills at it. So I decided to (2) a new hobby. I chose (3) because I'm tall. On the (4), our sports teacher teaches us new skills. This hobby helped me become healthier and stronger. You should all have a hobby to practice.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

Talent shows are fun events where people can show their special skills and abilities. Students, teachers, and sometimes parents can join the shows. Some people sing, dance, or play musical instruments. Others love painting and drawing nice pictures. While I prefer crafting with paper. It helps me make many shapes. Talent shows help us feel confident and proud of our talents. They also make us enjoy watching different performances.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1- Some people sing, dance, or play musical in talent shows.

- a) cars b) flowers c) instruments d) paper

2- Talent shows help us feel proud of our

- a) talents b) teachers c) animals d) skating

B) Answer the following questions.

3- What are talent shows?

.....

4- Who can join talent shows?

.....

5- Name two things people do in talent shows.

.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1- I can't (**helping**) you, I have a lot of homework.

2- What are you (**go**) watch on TV tomorrow?

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- yourself - care - have - of - You - take - to .

.....

2- Alexandria - days - in - two - spend - are - They - going to .

.....

7- Punctuate the following.

the guide dog is for blind people

where do your grandparents live

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Summer vacation"

(suitcase - Alexandria - swimming suit)

.....
.....
.....
.....

Test 13

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Maya went to her uncle's farm last week. ()
- 2- She saw cows and sheep in the fields. ()
- 3- Farmers milk sheep to get milk and cheese. ()
- 4- Sheep have thick and warm wool. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- My cousin likes the piano. He is very talented.
a) reading b) singing c) playing d) cycling
- 2- In the past, people used to send messages.
a) geckos b) donkeys c) pigeons d) falcons
- 3- I can't , but I can cycle.
a) swimming b) swim c) swims d) swam
- 4- Dina is than her sister.
a) good b) worst c) better d) bad

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(patients – examination – nurse – school – care)

The (1) is a very important person. Nurses work around the clock to help (2) and doctors at hospitals. They give patients good (3) when they are sick. They also help patients with tests in the (4) room. We should thank them for their great job.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

Every student should follow healthy habits at school to stay healthy. You should eat healthy food, wash your hands, and do sports. Doing sports makes you healthy and strong. You should also follow school rules. At school, if a student gets hurt, he should go to the nurse's room. The nurse has a first aid kit that can help with small accidents. The first aid kit should have bandages, plasters, and scissors. Nurses should make sure that the first aid kit is clean. You shouldn't make your classroom messy. It should be clean.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The opposite of the underlined word "strong" is
a) weak b) sad c) happy d) calm
- 2- Students must their hands, eat healthy food, and drink water.
a) eat b) wash c) play d) write

B) Answer the following questions.

3- What healthy habits should students follow?
.....

4- What does the first aid kit have?
.....

5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- You must (listens) to your parents carefully.
- 2- What does your uncle usually (planting) on his farm?

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- paper - crafting - love - with - students - Some .
.....

2- now - standing - The - the sheep - near - dog - is .
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

where do rescue dolphins help people

we should thank our scientists

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Animals"

(dolphin - help - dogs)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 14

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- They are going to visit Alexandria next week. ()
- 2- You can visit Qaitbay Citadel to read books. ()
- 3- You can swim in the sea and build sandcastles. ()
- 4- You can enjoy reading at Bibliotheca Alexandrina. ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- I like in the park on holidays.
a) swimming b) skating c) sleeping d) cleaning
- 2- help people feel relaxed when they are sad.
a) Dolphins b) Guide dogs c) Police dogs d) Horses
- 3- Bikes are than cars and buses for the environment.
a) better b) worse c) good d) best
- 4- You eat dirty food. It's very dangerous.
a) don't have b) must c) mustn't d) have to

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(Temple – home – cruise – horse – Pyramids)

My uncle is going to spend his summer holiday in his (1) country. He is going to visit Giza and Luxor. First, he is going to visit the Great (2) of Giza and ride a horse. Then, he is going to take a (3) to Luxor. He will spend a week there. He is going to visit the (4) of Karnak.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, I went to the hospital with my father. The hospital is a big place where doctors and nurses help sick people. The hospital has many rooms for different illnesses. Some people come to donate money to help others. The doctor examined my father carefully. He made a treatment plan to help him feel better. Nurses also help doctors. A nurse took my father to the examination room for tests. She was very kind and friendly. We should thank our doctors and nurses for their great job.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined word "examined" means
a) checked b) played c) slept d) ate
- 2- Some people come to money to help others.
a) play b) cut c) hit d) donate

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- What do doctors and nurses do at the hospital?
.....
- 4- How did the nurse help his father?
.....
- 5- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- Neptune is (cold) than Earth.
- 2- They (play) in the park at the moment.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- Way - Our - the - is - Milky - called - galaxy .
.....
- 2- their - in - hobbies - should - do - Students - free time .
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

Sara sabry was the first Egyptian female astronaut
how do you feel when you see bright stars

8- Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"The planetarium"

(Red Planet - Jupiter - Milky Way)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 15

1- Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Doctors help us live an unhealthy life. ()
- 2- Nurses examine patients at hospitals. ()
- 3- Doctors give patients the medicine they need. ()
- 4- Nurses help teachers and engineers at the offices ()

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- The climbs on the wall to eat insects.
a) scarab beetle b) buffalo c) gecko d) cow
- 2- We used our for drawing a new picture.
a) rings b) color pencils c) poster d) dogs
- 3- My parents are going our grandfather tomorrow.
a) visit b) to visit c) visiting d) visits
- 4- She can She has a bicycle.
a) cycles b) cycle c) cycling d) cycled

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

(hurt – guide – deaf – blind – walk)

My friend is (1)..... . He can't see, so he has a (2)..... dog to help. This dog is called a guide dog. It helps him (3)..... safely, cross the street, and move around without getting (4)..... . It is very calm and careful. My friend likes it very much. He gives him good care.

4- Read the text and answer the questions.

Hobbies are very important in our lives. They help us relax and feel happy after a long day of school or work. Having a hobby helps us learn new skills and improve our talents. Some hobbies make us healthy and active like sports. Other hobbies help us think and be creative like reading, playing board games, and solving puzzles. Hobbies aren't only fun, they help us grow better every day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) hobbies b) animals c) bags d) plants
- 2- Having a hobby helps us learn new and improve our talents.
a) games b) skills c) puzzles d) cycling

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3- How can sports help us?
.....
- 4- Give two examples of hobbies that help us think.
.....
- 5- What's the main idea of the text?
.....

5- Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1- The sun is the (**bright**) star in our solar system.
- 2- My friend (**wash**) his car tomorrow.

6- Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- very - to - going - The bus - crowded - is - be .
.....
- 2- the water - there - animals - Are - helping - any - in ?
.....

7- Punctuate the following.

Do you think english is easier than Arabic

I meet all my family on monday

8- Write an email of (40) words to invite your friend Merna to spend the summer vacation in your city Alexandria. Your name is Sandy.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar - Test 16

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- Strong water buffaloes pull through fields.
a) cats b) ploughs c) geckos d) dates
- 2- carry heavy loads through villages and to markets.
a) Dogs b) Pigeons c) Donkeys d) beetles
- 3- Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage
a) crops b) beetles c) water d) buffaloes

2- Read and complete the dialog.

(planets - solar - Jupiter - Mars)

Lina : Hi Adam! How many (1)..... are there in the solar system?

Adam: Hi Lina! There are eight planets. They move around the sun.

Lina : Which planet is your favorite?

Adam: My favorite planet is (2)..... because it is called the Red Planet. What about you?

Lina : I like (3)..... because it is the largest planet in the (4)..... system.

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- You can buy your from the pharmacy.
a) ticket b) medicine c) tools d) outfits
- 2- My brother loves outdoor hobbies, so he often on weekends.
a) crafts with paper b) builds puzzles c) cycles d) paints
- 3- You use the first aid kit without your mother's permission.
a) must b) mustn't c) did d) do
- 4- The Sun is the enormous star in our galaxy.
a) more b) most c) bigger d) helper

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1- I feed the cow in the barn now. (.....)
- 2- Jupiter is the bigger planet in the Milky Way. (.....)
- 3- We be going to see the ancient temples this weekend. (.....)

4- My brother can't sing well at the talent show, so he was sad. (.....)

5- Read the text and answer the questions.

Hobbies are activities that make our free time enjoyable. Some students love painting or crafting with paper, while others prefer playing the piano, singing, or solving puzzles. Outdoor hobbies, such as cycling or skating, keep people active and healthy. Many schools organize talent shows where students perform for their friends and family. These activities teach teamwork, caring for others, and encourage sharing. Doing hobbies regularly makes you happy and improves your problem-solving skills. Teachers often do surveys to understand students' favorite hobbies and arrange events.

A) Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Hobbies are activities that makes our free time enjoyable. ()
- 2- Doing hobbies regularly makes you feel boring. ()

B) Choose the correct answer.

- 3- Which hobby is mentioned as an outdoor activity?
- a) Painting b) Crafting with paper
- c) Cycling d) Playing the piano
- 4- What do many schools organize for students?
- a) A trip to the beach b) A science fair
- c) A talent show d) A workshop
- 5- What do teachers conduct (يُجرى) to know students' favorite hobbies?
- a) Surveys b) Discussions c) Tests d) Performances

6- Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"How animals help us"

(guide dogs - dolphins - scarab beetles - horses)

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar - Test 17

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- The hospital helps children who are
 a) happy b) sick c) excited d) strong
- 2- The most important thing is that all treatment is for the children.
 a) free b) comfortable c) relaxed d) sick
- 3- Many people money to help the hospital.
 a) eat b) help c) donate d) feel

2- Read and complete the dialog.

(far - criminals - smart - noses)

Mona: Hi Tarek! Do you know how police dogs help people?

Tarek: Yes, Mona! Police dogs are (1)..... They help officers find lost people and catch (2).....

Mona: That's true! They also use their strong (3)..... to smell things from (4)..... away.

Tarek: Wow! I don't know that.

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1- At the talent show, every student wants to well.
 a) perform b) pack c) hike d) donate
- 2- The train was so that there were no empty seats left.
 a) sad b) crowded c) ancient d) dangerous
- 3- Saturn has shiny around it.
 a) moon b) sun c) rings d) beetle
- 4- A carries letters between places.
 a) beetle b) pigeon c) buffalo d) dog

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- 1- My uncle is a farm who plants wheat and corn. (.....)
- 2- Look! The pigeon fly with a message. (.....)

- 3- They have to take medicine three times a day. (.....)
- 4- Dogs are most helpful than cats. (.....)

5- Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, our school went on a camping trip. We traveled to a beautiful forest near the mountains. Everyone was excited to spend time outside. We set up our tents and helped each other. We cooked food on a campfire and told stories at night. During the day, we played games, went hiking, and watched the birds.

A) Read and write (T) true or (F) false.

- 1- Last month, their school went on a camping trip. ()
- 2- Everyone was excited to spend time outside. ()

B) Choose the correct answer.

- 3- They set up their and helped each other.
a) bags b) books c) tents d) animals
- 4- They cooked food on a and told stories.
a) tent b) home c) mountain d) campfire
- 5- During the day, they went and watched the birds.
a) hiking b) sleeping c) reading d) writing

6- Write an email of FOUR (4) sentences to your friend from America inviting him to visit Egypt. Your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email is rami@gmail.com.

(invite - Great Pyramids of Giza - Nile River - Egyptian food)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening texts

Unit 1 - Lesson 2 (Page : 18)

Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. For example, when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving. When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity. When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and energetic.

Unit 1 - Lesson 3 (Page : 25)

Students at our school started a Hobby Club. Each student shared a talent. Sara painted in the library. Omar taught basketball skills. Laila organized a reading corner. Kareem started a small garden. A problem happened when everyone met at the same time. After discussion, they agreed to have different days for each hobby. The solution worked, making the club creative, fun, and organized.

Unit 1 - Lesson 4 (Page : 31)

Last month, I started a new hobby. I truly love nature and spending time in nature makes me happy. So I decided on gardening. I practiced my new hobby step by step. First, I brought some seeds, some soil, and a small pot. Then, I planted the seeds in the pot. I took care of them every day until they grew well. I enjoyed what I achieved.

Test on unit 1 (Page : 41)

To start a new hobby, choose one that matches your interests. Then, start practicing your new hobby, don't try to be perfect immediately; learning takes time. Play simple songs at first, or plant a small seed in a single pot. After that, practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing progress.

AI-Azhar Test on unit 1 (Page : 44)

Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy. For example, when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving. When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity. When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and energetic.

Unit 2 - Lesson 1 (Page : 50)

My brother felt so tired yesterday. He had a headache and a sore throat. My mom took him to see the doctor. At the clinic, he went into the examination room. The doctor examined him and gave him medicine. He advised him to rest and take the medicine. He also told him not to drink cold water. He is feeling better today.

Unit 2 - Lesson 3 (Page : 66)

Our school organized a trip to Cairo. We visited the famous hospital 57-3-57. It's very clean. We saw the playrooms and libraries. The doctors and nurses are very kind to children. Families don't have to pay money, because many families donate money to help.

Unit 2 - Lessons 4,5 (Page : 73)

I'm Amr. I was sick last Sunday. I couldn't go to work. I had a sore throat and a cough. So I wanted to rest at home. I sent an email to my manager to have a rest for three days. I felt better on Tuesday and went to work the next day.

Unit 2 - Test (Page : 79)

I'm Berry. My mother is a nurse. She works at Hospital 57-3-57. It's a famous hospital for children. At the hospital, all treatment is free. My mother takes the sick children to the examination room. The doctors are very kind and explain the treatment plan for families.

AI-Azhar Test on unit 2 (Page : 81)

The nurse's job is very important. Nurses are very helpful at hospitals and schools. They always have a first aid kit. The kit has bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises. They also take care of patients and help them feel better.

Unit 3 - Lesson 1 (Page : 88)

Ali and his family decided to go to Alexandria next weekend because it will be a holiday. He is going to take his swimming suit and his camera. Ali is going to swim in the sea. His father is going to pack his summer clothes. His mother is going to pack the sunscreen. It's going to be sunny.

Unit 3 - Lesson 3 (Page : 105)

My favorite hobby is camping. I go with my family to a campsite in the summer. When we arrive, we set up our tents by a beautiful lake. Then, my father starts the campfire for my mother to prepare the food. The night in the campsite is wonderful. Spending the night under the bright stars is so comfortable. My parents always tell us funny stories.

Unit 3 - Lessons 4,5 (Page : 110)

Last Friday, Ahmed sent an email invitation to his friend John. He lived in the USA. He wants John to come and visit the Great Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Ahmed always tells him about the pharaohs who built the Pyramids. He always tells him that the pharaohs were very creative. Now, Ahmed is waiting for John's reply.

Test on unit 3 (Page : 115)

Last week was a vacation. My father arranged a surprising trip for us. We took the train to Luxor on Sunday. We spent two days there. We visited the temples of Karnak and the Luxor Temple and many ancient places. On Tuesday, we took a Nile cruise to Aswan. In Aswan, we took a felucca to enjoy the wonderful views of the Nile and the islands.

Al-Azhar Test on unit 3 (Page : 117)

I'm Nour. Travelling is my favorite hobby. Every summer, my father takes us to Alexandria. We go there by car. We swim in the sea. My brother likes to build sandcastles on the beach. My father enjoys fishing in the sea.

Review 1 (Page : 119)

I'm Nour. My favorite hobbies are reading stories and crafting with paper. My father always brings me stories to read. Reading before bedtime is better than watching TV. On Fridays, I like making things with my hands, so it a day for crafting with paper. I like to make shapes of animals. My family loves my crafts.

Unit 4 - Lesson 1 (Page : 129)

I'm Ahmed. My uncle is blind. He can't see. He has a guide dog. Its name is wooly. It helps him walk safely, cross the road, and move around. My uncle likes him very much and takes care of him. On Friday, I don't have school, so I go to visit my uncle and help him. I also like to play with the dog.

Unit 4 - Lesson 3 (Page : 148)

Ahmed went to his grandfather's farm with his family last Friday. The weather was very cool. They saw cows, sheep and buffaloes. He saw a farmer milking a cow. He drank fresh milk. He saw a man cutting the sheep's wool to make blankets. Ahmed helped his grandfather feed the chickens.

Unit 4 - Lessons 4,5 (Page : 154)

I'm Amr. On my way to school. I see many farms. I also see the egret. It's the farmer's friend. Egrets help farmers by eating insects and hoppers. These insects eat the rice plants. They also help animals like the water buffalo. They eat flies that bother the buffalo. It has a sharp beak and long legs that help them walk through fields.

Test on unit 4 (Page : 161)

Animals can help us live safely in our community. You can use them in different ways. Dogs can help us. Police dogs can help officers find lost people. Guide dogs can help blind people move around and cross the streets easily and safely. They are calm and careful dogs.

Al-Azhar Test on unit 4 (Page : 163)

Both pigeons and falcons help us. In the past, people used pigeons as messengers. They carried messages to different places and return home. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage the crops.

Unit 5 Lesson 1 (Page : 170)

Our school arranged a trip Alexandria. We are going to visit many places. We are going to visit the planetarium. Our science teacher says that it's amazing to explore the planets. We can see the sun, the moon, the stars and the planets. Jupiter is the largest planet in our solar system. Saturn has shiny rings around it. The planets make space nice to explore.

Unit 5 Lesson 3 (Page : 187)

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. Sara says, 'I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible.' In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets.

Unit 5 Lessons 4,5 (Page : 194)

The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are. It looks like a bright band of stars across the night sky. It is shaped like a big circle that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust. The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars! It has planets, moons, and rocks like comets and asteroids. The Sun is one of the stars near the edge of our galaxy.

Test on Unit 5 (Page : 200)

Our solar system is part of the Milky Way. The Milky Way is so huge that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it! When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy. There may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe - even bigger ones!

Al-Azhar Test on unit 5 (Page : 203)

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with round windows. The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the dark sky. Outside, the bright Moon looked like a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky.

Test 1 (Page : 227)

I'm Sandy. My favorite subject is science. I like studying planets and stars. Last Sunday, our teacher asked us to make posters about the planets. I drew Mercury, Venus, and Earth. My teacher thanked me for my poster. He was very happy.

Test 2 (Page : 229)

Dolphins are amazing animals. They live in water. They are very helpful. The rescue dolphin help people who are in danger at sea. They show us that helping people is a very important job. I like watching videos about dolphins.

Test 3 (Page : 231)

A white egret is an amazing bird. It has a sharp beak and long legs. It uses its sharp beak to catch hoppers. It uses its long legs to walk through fields. It can eat hundreds of insects in a single day.

Test 4 (Page : 233)

Dr. Waleed is going to travel to his home country Egypt. He is Egyptian. He wants to show his family the most beautiful places in their one-month vacation. He is going to take a train to Luxor to see amazing temples.

Test 5 (Page : 235)

I'm Ahmed. I want to visit Hospital 57-3-57. I want to help children. When I grew up. I want to be a doctor to help patients. My father is a teacher. My mother is a nurse. She likes her job. They go to work early.

Test 6 (Page : 237)

Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time. Board games and solving puzzles help us learn teamwork and problem-solving. Singing songs and playing the piano helps us learn patience. Cycling and skating help us stay strong and healthier.

Test 7 (Page : 239)

Our solar system is very amazing to explore. You can see amazing planets and stars. The sun and the Moon are parts of our galaxy. Jupiter is the largest planet. Mercury and Venus are small planets. Our galaxy is called The Milky Way.

Test 8 (Page : 241)

Hello, I'm Berry. I like horses and dogs very much. They are my favorite animals. Horses can help people who feel sad or scared feel much better. A guide dog helps blind people move around safely. They are very useful animals and have important jobs.

Test 9 (Page : 243)

I'm Aya. Reading is my favorite hobby. I like reading about birds. I read about pigeons and falcons. Pigeons have an important role as a messenger. They carry messages to different places. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage the crops.

Test 10 (Page : 245)

Each school must have a big first aid kit in the nurse's room. It has everything you need for injuries and cuts. There are scissors, plasters, and medicine. Nurses have to check that it is clean. You mustn't open the first aid kit without permission.

Test 11 (Page : 247)

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She inspires young people in Egypt to follow their dreams. She studied the solar system and the planets. Earth is bigger than Mercury and colder than Venus.

Test 12 (Page : 249)

Animals on the farm have important jobs. Water buffaloes pull ploughs through fields. Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. They transport crops. Donkeys know their routes very well.

Test 13 (Page : 251)

I'm Maya. Last week we went to my uncle's farm. We saw cows in the field. Farmers milk cows to get fresh milk and make cheese. We also saw sheep eating grass. They have thick and warm wool.

Test 14 (Page : 253)

Next week, we are going to visit Alexandria. It is a wonderful city. It has many places to visit. You can enjoy swimming in the sea. You can build sandcastles on beach. I like reading. I can visit Bibliotheca Alexandrina to enjoy reading.

Test 15 (Page : 255)

Doctors and Nurses do very important jobs. They help us live healthier lives. Doctors examine patients and give them medicine. Nurses help patients and doctors at the hospital. We should respect them and thank them for their great work.

Test 16 - Al-Azhar (Page : 257)

In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their lives. On farms, strong water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields. Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops.

Test 17 - Al-Azhar (Page : 259)

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. The most important thing is that all treatment is free for the children. Many people donate money to help hospital.